



WITH  
FREE ONLINE  
**AUDIO**



on cloud nine



snowed under

# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### ENGLISH IDIOMS



rings a bell



LEARN AND PRACTISE MORE THAN 1,000 COMMON IDIOMS

## Author

---

**Thomas Booth** worked for 10 years as an English-language teacher in Poland and Russia. He now lives in England, where he works as an editor and English-language materials writer. He has contributed to a number of books in the *English for Everyone* series.

## US consultant

---

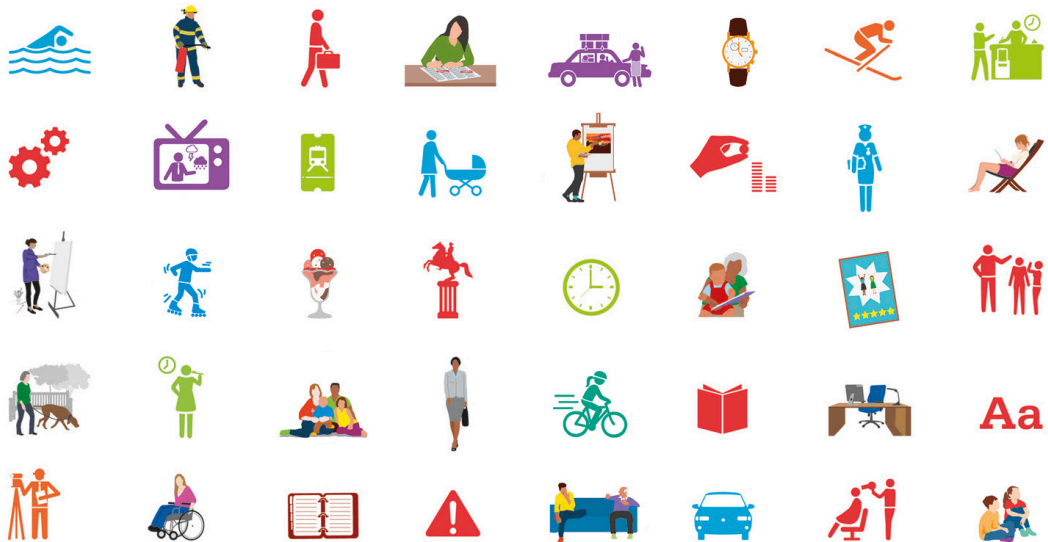
**Jenny Wilson**, MEd, has taught English as a foreign language in the US and UK for many years, at private institutes and universities including the University of Wisconsin–Madison. She has also worked as an IELTS examiner and written English-language materials for Collins Language, Cambridge University Press, and Corwin.



# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### ENGLISH IDIOMS





Penguin  
Random  
House

Senior Editor Laura Sandford  
Senior Art Editor Amy Child  
Illustration Square Egg  
Managing Editor Christine Stroyan  
Managing Art Editor Anna Hall  
Jacket Designer Surabhi Wadhwa  
Jacket Editor Emma Dawson  
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT  
Producer, Pre-production Robert Dunn  
Producer Jude Crozier  
Publisher Andrew Macintyre  
Art Director Karen Self  
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

#### DK India

Senior Editor Janashree Singha  
Assistant Editor Rishi Bryan  
Project Art Editor Vikas Sachdeva  
Art Editors Pallavi Kapur, Roshni Kapur  
Assistant Art Editor Monam Nishat  
Managing Editor Soma B. Chowdhury  
Senior Managing Art Editor Arunesh Talapatra  
Pre-production Manager Balwant Singh  
DTP Designer Anita Yadav

First published in Great Britain in 2019 by  
Dorling Kindersley Limited  
80 Strand, London, WC2R 0RL

Copyright © 2019 Dorling Kindersley Limited  
A Penguin Random House Company  
10 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 9  
001-309818-Mar/2019

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored  
in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted,  
in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical,  
photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior  
written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book  
is available from the British Library.  
ISBN: 978-0-2413-3588-8  
Printed in China

All images © Dorling Kindersley Limited  
For further information see: [www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)

A WORLD OF IDEAS:  
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

# Contents

## How to use this book

6

## DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

01	Age	10
02	Friends and family	14
03	Appearance and background	18
04	Personality traits	22
05	Good things	26
06	Bad things	30
07	Animals	34
08	Food	38

## ATTITUDE

09	Agreeing and disagreeing	42
10	Behavior	46
11	Emotions	50
12	Positive emotions	54
13	Negative emotions	58
14	Memory	62
15	The body	66
16	War and weapons	70

## SITUATIONS AND CIRCUMSTANCES

17	Amount and distance	74
18	Beginning and ending	78

19	Chance, luck, and probability	82
20	Ease and difficulty	86
21	Safety and danger	90
22	Difficult situations	94
23	The weather and nature	98

## COMMUNICATION

24	Talking	102
25	Sharing information	106
26	Truth and lies	110
27	Looking and listening	114
28	Music and the arts	118

## EVERYDAY LIFE

29	Eating and drinking	122
30	Describing your health	126
31	Knowledge and education	130
32	Money	134
33	Shopping	138
34	Time	142
35	Clothes	146

## WORK AND ACHIEVEMENTS

36	Working and relaxing	150
37	Movement and progress	154
38	Rules, law, and authority	158
39	Success and failure	162

40	Work and business 1	166
41	Work and business 2	170
42	Sports	174

## EXPRESSIONS

43	"Make" and "do"	178
44	"Give" and "take"	182
45	"Have" and "get"	186
46	"Set" and "put"	190
47	"Go" and "come"	194
48	Expressions with other verbs	198
49	Intensifying adverbs	202
50	Similes	206
51	Proverbs	210
52	Easily confused words 1	214
53	Easily confused words 2	218
54	Colors	222

Answers	226
Index of idioms and expressions	239
Index of common words and subjects	254
Acknowledgments	256

# How to use this book

*English for Everyone: English Idioms* will help you learn, understand, and remember the most common English idioms and expressions. Each of the 54 units in the book consists of a teaching spread on a subject or theme, with illustrated sentences to place the idiom in context, and then a practice spread with exercises to reinforce what you have learned. Listen to the free audio and repeat each expression and sentence. The answers to all the exercises are at the back of the book, along with comprehensive indexes.

**Unit number** The book is divided into units. The unit number helps you keep track of your progress.

**Modules** Many teaching spreads are broken into modules covering different categories of idioms.

**Module number** Every module is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate the related audio.

**Sample sentences** English idioms are shown in the context of a sample sentence.

**Definitions** Idiomatic English expressions are accompanied by definitions.

**Supporting graphics** Visual cues help you understand and remember new idioms.

**Write-on lines** You are encouraged to write your own translations of English idioms to create your own reference pages.

## 20 Ease and difficulty

### 20.1 EASE

The test was **a cinch**. I finished it 20 minutes early.

*extremely easy*



Getting around my city is **a breeze**. Our trains are excellent.

*easy*



Winning that race was **like shooting fish in a barrel**. Nobody else had trained.

*very easy (usually about overcoming competition)*



It's **all too easy** to forget to turn off the lights when you go out.

*very easy (usually about a mistake)*



Making a great cup of coffee is **not rocket science**.

*not very complicated or difficult*



Finding Angela's house was **easy peasy**. I have a GPS.

*easy*



I already play the violin, so learning the cello was **a walk in the park**.

*easy*



Unclogging my sink was **a piece of cake** for Carlita. She's a plumber.

*extremely easy and straightforward*



Alicia's worked in this factory so long she could do her job **with her eyes shut**.

*easily, or without thinking*



Driving on the left was difficult at first, but soon it was **smooth sailing**. (US)

*easy, without major problems*



### 20.2 DIFFICULTIES AND PROBLEMS

Doing the dishes after a dinner party is **a pain in the neck**.

*very annoying or problematic*

Don't **make a mountain out of a molehill**. I only asked you help me bake a cake!

*make a small task or problem seem bigger than it is*

Giving up chocolate is **easier said than done**.

*not as easy as it seems*

I was **like a fish out of water** at the science fiction convention.

*in a difficult or unusual situation*

Bashir was totally **out of his depth** on his first day working at the florist.

*in a situation that is too difficult*

**Listening exercise** This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.

THE BEGINNINGS OF THE  
THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- move on
- blue moon
- of time
- till dawn
- of dawn
- knew it

**34.4** LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- A a drag ☐
- B at the crack of dawn ☒
- C bright and early ☐
- D dragged on ☐
- E ages ☐
- F flown by ☐
- G killed time ☐
- H the dead of night ☐

PROBLEMS

er

My home improvements **opened a can of worms**. The builders discovered so many problems.  
caused a situation that leads to more difficulties



of  
to

The team has a **mountain to climb** if it wants to win the game.  
a huge amount to do, or problem to overcome



r

Finishing the building this month is going to be a **tall order**.  
very difficult



at  
n.

There have been **teething problems** with the new computer system at work. (UK)  
problems at the beginning of a process



g

I tried to make the politician answer my question, but it was **like getting blood from a stone**. (UK)  
extremely difficult, usually because of someone's behavior



87

**Exercise number** Each exercise is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate answers.

**Sample answer** The first question of each exercise is answered for you, to help make the task easy to understand.

**Exercise instruction** Each exercise is introduced with a brief instruction, telling you what you need to do.

**Aa 34.6** MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| kept busy while waiting                       | Time's up!          |
| 1 unexpectedly soon or quickly                | before we knew it   |
| 2 very late at night                          | killed time         |
| 3 You have no more time to complete a task.   | a drag              |
| 4 a boring experience that passes very slowly | the wee hours       |
| 5 at the last possible moment                 | flown by            |
| 6 passed very quickly or too quickly          | in the nick of time |

**Aa 34.7** LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES

- We must get a move on or we'll miss the start of the play.
- 1 Ren arrived \_\_\_\_\_ for his first day at work.
- 2 Júlio \_\_\_\_\_ finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.
- 3 It's nearly midnight. It's \_\_\_\_\_ we went home.
- 4 Victoria is always \_\_\_\_\_ for her English class.
- 5 Huan only cooks at home \_\_\_\_\_.

145

**PRACTICE SPREAD**

**UK/US idioms** Some idioms are specific to UK or US English. These are labeled (UK) or (US).

**Space for writing** You are encouraged to write your answers in the book for future reference.

**Audio support** All teaching modules are supported by audio recordings to help you recognize and pronounce spoken vocabulary.

# Idioms and expressions

Idioms can be one of the most difficult parts of a language for learners to understand and use correctly. *English for Everyone: English Idioms* includes over 1,000 of the most common and useful English idioms, along with set expressions and easily confused words.

## IDIOMS

Idioms are expressions that cannot be understood literally. For example, “like two peas in a pod” has nothing to do with peas, but means two people look alike.

Idiomatic expression

Mateo and his brother Lucas are **like two peas in a pod**. I can't tell them apart.



## SET EXPRESSIONS

Some of the expressions in this book are not idioms, but particular common combinations of words. Learners often make mistakes when they use these set expressions.

Set expression

Shreya's going to **have a baby** this summer.



## EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

This book also includes two units on words that are easily confused by English-language learners, such as “say” and “tell.”

When you use “say”, you don't have to state who a person is talking to.

“Oh, no,” **said** Kayleigh. “I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it.”



When you use “tell”, you must state who a person is talking to.

Kayleigh had to **tell** her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.





# Audio

*English for Everyone: English Idioms* features extensive supporting audio resources. Every expression and sentence in the teaching spreads is recorded, and you are encouraged to listen to the audio and repeat the phrases and sentences out loud, until you are confident you understand and can pronounce what has been said.



## SUPPORTING AUDIO

This symbol indicates that audio recordings of the idioms and sentences in a module are available for you to listen to.



## LISTENING EXERCISES

This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.



**FREE AUDIO**  
website and app  
[www.dkefe.com](http://www.dkefe.com)

# Answers

The book is designed to make it easy to monitor your progress. Answers are provided for every exercise, so you can see how well you have understood and remembered the idioms and expressions you have learned.

## Exercise numbers

Match these numbers to the number at the top-left corner of each exercise.

**Answers** Find the answers to every exercise printed at the back of the book.

36

36.4

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C

36.5

- 1 She's working hard.
- 2 We rested.
- 3 Julie tried her best.
- 4 Carmen is not working.
- 5 It was hard work.

36.6

- 1 Leo always goes the extra mile to make his customers happy.
- 2 Akash usually takes 40 minutes to finish his lunch.
- 3 I'm sorry, I can't talk to you now; my hands are full.
- 4 Celia had to put her head down to finish her essay to meet the deadline.
- 5 Brandon is a slacker. He procrastinates and ignores the customers.
- 6 After a long day working, he was exhausted to put his feet up and watch TV.

# Indexes

This book includes two indexes: an index of idioms and expressions, and an index of common words and subjects.

## INDEX OF IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS

The index of idioms and expressions contains every expression from the teaching spreads, listed in alphabetical order by key word.

M

can't **make** heads or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1

**make** a bee line for 37.1

**make** a cake 43.1

**make** a choice 43.1

**make** a fresh start 18.1

**make** a joke 43.1

**make** a mess 43.1

**make** a mountain out of a molehill 20.2

**make** a noise 43.1

**make** a phone call 43.1

**make** a pig's ear of something 7.1

**make** a rod for your own back 22.2

**make** arrangements 43.1

**make** a scene 28.1

**make** ends meet 32.1

**make** great strides 37.1

**make** progress 43.1

**make** some friends 43.1

**make** someone's blood boil 13.1

**make** someone's hair stand on end 13.3

**make** someone's mouth water 29.1

**make** waves 23.2

keep in **mind** (US) / bear in mind (UK) 14.1

someone's **mind** goes blank 14.1

something slips your **mind** 14.1

speak your **mind** 24.2

spring to **mind** 14.1

great **minds** think alike 31.1

a **minefield** 16.1

a misery guts (UK), see a downer (US)

go **missing** 47.1

break the **mold** 31.3

**make** a mountain out of a **molehill** 20.2

easy **money** 32.1

**money** doesn't grow on trees 32.1

throw **money** around 32.1

throw **money** down the drain 32.1

once in a blue **moon** 34.1, 54.1

over the **moon** 12.1

**moth**-eaten 6.1

set the wheels in **motion** 37.1

a **mountain** to climb 20.2

**make** a **mountain** out of a molehill 20.2

as quiet as a **mouse** 50.2

be born with a silver spoon in your **mouth** 3.3

by word of **mouth** 25.1

foam at the **mouth** 11.2

**UK/US idioms** If an idiom has a UK or US equivalent, both versions are listed in the index.

**Key words** Each entry in the index contains a key word from the expression in bold.

**Module number** Match the number in the index to the module number on the teaching page.

## INDEX OF COMMON WORDS AND SUBJECTS

Use this index to find idioms relating to a subject or expressions using a common word.

A

"absolutely" 49.1  
advantage and disadvantage 3.3  
adverbs, intensifying 49  
age 1  
agreement 9.1  
amount 17.1  
anger 13.2  
animals 4.2, 7, 25.2, 41.4, 50.2  
appearance 3  
arts, the 28  
"as" 50.1  
authority 38

B

background 3.3  
bad things 6  
"beat" 52.4  
beginning 18.1  
behavior 10  
body, the 11.1, 15, 38.2  
"borrow" 52.5  
business 40, 41

# 01 Age

## 1.1 IDIOMS ABOUT AGE

After climbing the hill, I realized I'm **no spring chicken**!

*no longer young*



My assistant is a bit **wet behind the ears**. He still has a lot to learn.

*young and inexperienced*



Becky's worried she's **getting on in years** after spotting more gray hairs. (US)

*getting old*



Sanjay feels **as old as the hills** when his kids talk about technology.

*extremely old*



These **bright young things** have just started college.

*young, enthusiastic, fashionable, or ambitious people*



This TV show **bridges the generation gap**. The whole family loves it.

*appeals to people of all ages*



## 1.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "AGE"

My grandpa got married again at the **ripe old age** of 92.

*very old age*



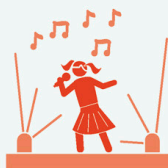
Brendan's teacher told him to start **acting his age**.

*behaving in a way appropriate to his age*



Sally first sang on stage at the **tender age** of 7.

*very young age*



I **feel my age** when I go shopping with my children.

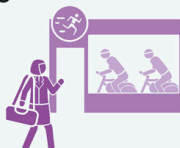
*am conscious of being older*





I've just turned 40, and I'm **in the prime of my life**. I always go to the gym after work.

*at my best; healthy and successful*



Katie started learning piano when she was **knee-high to a grasshopper**.

*very young*



I'm too **long in the tooth** to try out skydiving.

*old*



Derek and Joan spent their **twilight years** traveling the world.

*the last years of someone's life*



I can't come to that nightclub with you! I'm **over the hill**.

*old; past my best years*



Angela might be 84, but she is still **young at heart**.

*youthful, despite being old*



Damien's at **that awkward age** and finds it hard to talk to people.

*the period of adolescence when people feel very self-conscious*



In many countries, there is a big celebration when young people **come of age**.

*reach maturity, or have the same legal rights as adults*



Many singers' voices **improve with age**.

*get better as they get older*



Stephen has reached the **great age** of 100.

*very old age*



Aa

## 1.3 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

YOUNG

*bright young things*

OLD

no spring chicken

~~bright young things~~

tender age

over the hill

knee-high to a grasshopper

great age



## 1.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



I've just turned 40, and I'm in the prime of my life. I always go to the gym after work.



3 My grandpa got married again at the \_\_\_\_\_ of 92.



1 Becky's worried she's \_\_\_\_\_ after spotting more gray hairs.



4 This TV show \_\_\_\_\_ . The whole family loves it.



2 Damien's at \_\_\_\_\_ and finds it hard to talk to people.



5 I \_\_\_\_\_ when I go shopping with my children.

## 1.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Brendan's teacher told him to start **playing his age**.

*Brendan's teacher told him to start acting his age.*



- 1 I'm too **long in the mouth** to try out skydiving.



- 2 My assistant is a bit **wet behind the neck**. He still has a lot to learn.



- 3 Derek and Joan spent their **midnight years** traveling the world.



- 4 In many countries, there is a big celebration when young people **arrive of age**.



- 5 Angela might be 84, but she is still **young at mind**.



- 6 Sanjay feels **as old as the mountains** when his kids talk about technology.



## 1.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

no longer young

= n o s p r i n g c h i c k e n

- 1 get better as they get older

= i \_\_\_\_\_ w \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 old; past my best years

= o \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 very old age

= g \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 the last years of someone's life

= t \_\_\_\_\_ y \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 youthful, despite being old

= y \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 very young age

= t \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_

# 02 Friends and family

## 2.1 FRIENDSHIP

Harper regrets **losing touch with** all her old school friends.

*no longer being in contact with*



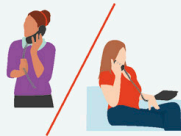
I think Claire's found **a soulmate**. Both she and Dan love reading.

*the perfect person to be a friend or partner*



I've **kept in touch with** Lin since we left college 25 years ago.

*continued to be in contact with*



Marie and Pierre met through Isaac, **a mutual friend** of theirs.

*a shared friend of two people*



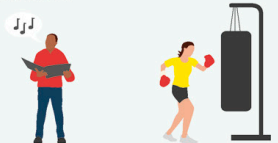
Ramón and Tara **get on like a house on fire**. They're always talking and laughing.

*get along extremely well; have a very good relationship*



Mia and I have **drifted apart** since she left our choir and started boxing instead.

*slowly become less friendly or close to each other*



I **struck up a friendship with** Pete while we were in cooking class last year.

*became friends with*



My wife and I **hit it off** immediately when we first met at a country music concert.

*became friends very quickly*



Donna was **a fair-weather friend**. She wouldn't help when my house flooded.

*a friend who deserts you when you have difficulties*



Cy and I **got off on the wrong foot** on our date. He was an hour late and forgot my name.

*started our relationship badly*



## 2.2 FAMILY

Bob reminds me so much of his father.  
He is **a chip off the old block**.

*very similar to someone in his family*



We're moving to a bigger house  
because we're hoping to  
**start a family** soon.

*have children*



Jade is **a family friend**. She grew up on  
the same street as us.

*someone who has known your  
family for some time*



I am close to my **immediate family**,  
but rarely see my other relatives.

*close family, such as parents, sons,  
daughters, brothers, and sisters*



Uncle Tony is **the black sheep of the family**.  
He's been to prison three times.

*someone who brings shame to the family  
or is the odd one in the family*



We're **bringing up** our children to  
be kind to animals.

*teaching a child how to behave*



That vase is **a family heirloom**.  
Lou's grandfather bought it in  
China in 1893.

*an object that has been passed down  
through the generations of a family*



Boris often asks members of  
his **extended family** to help  
with childcare.

*wider family, such as grandparents,  
cousins, nephews, and nieces*



We're **a close-knit family**. We  
always meet up for birthdays  
and holidays.

*a loyal and supportive family*



Curly hair **runs in our family**,  
and my daughter, mom, and  
I all have it.

*is a common feature in our family*



## 2.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

close family, such as parents, sons, daughters, brothers, and sisters

a fair-weather friend

1 an object that has been passed down through the generations of a family

immediate family

2 a friend who deserts you when you have difficulties

losing touch with

3 no longer being in contact with

a family heirloom

4 the perfect person to be a friend or partner

a soulmate

5 slowly become less friendly or close to each other

extended family

6 wider family, such as grandparents, cousins, nephews, and nieces

drifted apart



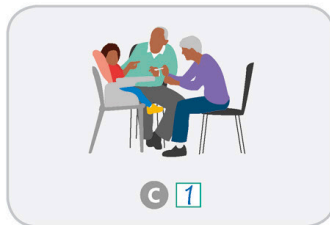
## 2.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C ☒ 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐



Aa

## 2.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Bob reminds me so much of his father. He is a chip off the old ~~brick~~ / ~~block~~ / ~~leg~~.

- 1 We're moving to a bigger house because we're hoping to ~~begin~~ / ~~start~~ / ~~have~~ a family soon.
- 2 My wife and I ~~struck~~ / ~~hit~~ / ~~beat~~ it off immediately when we first met at a country music concert.
- 3 Uncle Tony is the black ~~sheep~~ / ~~horse~~ / ~~cow~~ of the family. He's been to prison three times.
- 4 Cy and I got off on the wrong ~~hand~~ / ~~leg~~ / ~~foot~~ on our date. He was an hour late and forgot my name.
- 5 Ramón and Tara get on like a ~~house~~ / ~~barn~~ / ~~home~~ on fire. They're always talking and laughing.

Aa

## 2.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



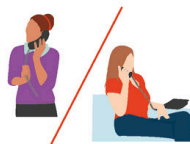
My wife and I hit it off immediately when we first met at a country music concert.



- 3 Curly hair \_\_\_\_\_ , and my daughter, mom, and I all have it.



- 1 We're \_\_\_\_\_ our children to be kind to animals.



- 4 I've \_\_\_\_\_ Lin since we left college 25 years ago.



- 2 Marie and Pierre met through Isaac, \_\_\_\_\_ of theirs.



- 5 Jade is \_\_\_\_\_ . She grew up on the same street as us.

# 03 Appearance and background

## 3.1 APPEARANCE

Leo **bears a striking resemblance** to his grandfather.

*looks extremely similar*



Mateo and his brother Lucas are **like two peas in a pod**. I can't tell them apart.

*extremely similar to each other*



Karen is **the spitting image of** that actor in the new sci-fi film.

*almost identical to*



You must eat something! You're **all skin and bones**.

*too thin*



Oscar is only 25, but he's already **getting thin on top**. (US)

*going bald*



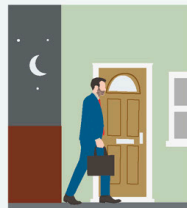
Rita **looked like she'd seen a ghost** after I told her my news.

*looked very scared or shocked*



Milan returned home with **five o'clock shadow** after a long day at the office.

*the beginning of a beard*



Rachel **looked like a drowned rat** after she got caught in the rain on her way home.

*was very wet*



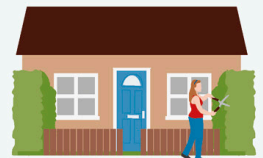
Edie **looks like butter wouldn't melt in her mouth**, but she's actually really naughty.

*looks innocent, like she wouldn't do anything bad*



My aunt believed in **keeping up appearances** despite having little money.

*pretending that things are going well*





### 3.2 STYLE AND DRESS

Domenica **looked the part** for her first day of work at the bank.

*was dressed in the right way*



George arrived at the restaurant **immaculately groomed** for his date with Cassie.

*elegantly dressed and well presented*



Clara **looked like a million bucks** when she arrived for her wedding. (US)

*looked extremely glamorous*



Nalini **never has a hair out of place**. She cares a lot about her appearance.

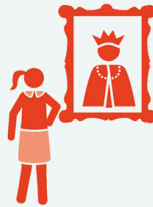
*is extremely neat and well groomed*



### 3.3 BACKGROUND, ADVANTAGE, AND DISADVANTAGE

Rebecca **has blue blood**. Her great-grandmother was a princess.

*is descended from important people or aristocracy*



Philip **was born with a silver spoon in his mouth**. He grew up in a castle in France.

*was born into a wealthy family*



My aunt is **a pillar of the community**. She supports charities and attends local events.

*an important or well-respected person*



Maxine is such **a highflier**. She's been promoted twice this year and is only 23. (US)

*a very talented and successful person*



Danika's parents don't approve of Bob because he's from **the wrong side of the tracks**.

*the wrong social background or part of town*



My parents **didn't have two pennies to rub together**, but we still had lots of fun.

*were very poor*



## 3.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

My parents didn't have two pennies to rub together, but we still had lots of fun.

My parents were rich. ☐

My parents were poor. ☒

- 1 My aunt is a pillar of the community. She supports charities and attends local events.

My aunt is a well-respected person. ☐

My aunt is a dishonest person. ☐

- 2 Philip was born with a silver spoon in his mouth. He grew up in a castle in France.

Philip has always been wealthy. ☐

Philip has always been generous. ☐

- 3 Danika's parents don't approve of Bob because he's from the wrong side of the tracks.

Bob is a train driver. ☐

Bob is from the wrong social background. ☐

- 4 Clara looked like a million bucks when she arrived for her wedding.

Clara looked extremely nervous. ☐

Clara looked extremely glamorous. ☐

- 5 Rebecca has blue blood. Her great-grandmother was a princess.

She is descended from important people. ☐

She is a princess. ☐

## 3.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

George arrived at the restaurant **immaculately styled** for his date with Cassie.

George arrived at the restaurant immaculately groomed for his date with Cassie.



- 1 Edie **looks like ice cream wouldn't melt in her mouth**, but she's actually really naughty.



- 2 Oscar is only 25, but he's already **getting slim on top**.



- 3 My aunt believed in **holding up appearances** despite having little money.



- 4 Nalini **never has a hair out of sight**. She cares a lot about her appearance.



- 5 Milan returned home with **four o'clock shadow** after a long day at the office.





### 3.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Leo bears a striking resemblance to his grandfather.

1



Domenica \_\_\_\_\_ for her first day of work at the bank.

2



Clara \_\_\_\_\_ when she arrived for her wedding.

3



Mateo and his brother Lucas are \_\_\_\_\_. I can't tell them apart.

4



Karen is \_\_\_\_\_ that actor in the new sci-fi film.

5



Rita \_\_\_\_\_ after I told her my news.

6



Rachel \_\_\_\_\_ after she got caught in the rain on her way home.

## Aa

### 3.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

extremely similar to each other

= l i k e t w o p e a s i n a p o d

1 too thin

= a \_ \_ \_ s \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_ b \_ \_ \_

2 almost identical to

= t \_ \_ \_ s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ i \_ \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_

3 going bald

= g \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_ t \_ \_

4 the beginning of a beard

= f \_ \_ \_ \_ o ' \_ \_ \_ \_ s \_ \_ \_ \_

5 a very talented and successful person

= a h \_ \_ \_ f \_ \_ \_ \_

# 04 Personality traits

## 4.1 DESCRIBING PERSONALITY

Lucia has **a vivid imagination**.  
Her artworks are so original.

*an ability to think of exciting  
images and ideas*



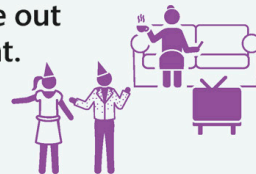
Gustav has **a selfish streak**.  
He won't share his cookies  
with his friends.

*a tendency to be selfish*



Norah is such **a fuddy-duddy**.  
She never wants to come out  
with us on Saturday night.

*someone who is unwilling  
to try new things*



Arturo is so **two-faced**. He said  
he liked my haircut but told  
his friends he hated it.

*insincere or hypocritical*



Chetan is **as bold as brass**. He walked  
up to the actor and asked for  
an autograph.

*very confident*



My dad's just **an average Joe**.  
He enjoys burgers and fries, and  
loves watching baseball. (US)

*a stereotypical man  
who has simple tastes*



It was great to see Jasmine  
at the party. She's always  
**a barrel of laughs**.

*a fun person or situation*



Bob is such **a crybaby**. He  
was very upset about not  
getting a perfect score.

*someone who cries a lot without  
good reason*



Zoe loves proving how much  
she knows. She's **too smart for  
her own good**.

*annoyingly proud of her  
intelligence or knowledge*



Noah is really **down to earth**.  
He earns lots of money, but he lives  
in a little cottage.

*practical and unpretentious*



## 4.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

I know Rex looks a bit scary, but he **wouldn't hurt a fly**.

*is completely harmless*



Claire is **a social butterfly**. She's always going to parties.

*a very sociable person*



My uncle's **a lone wolf**. He lives on his own in a cabin in the forest.

*someone who prefers to live or work alone*



Tony **wouldn't say boo to a goose**. He gets really shy when he talks to customers. (UK)

*is very timid and nervous*



Don't be afraid of Linda. **Her bark is worse than her bite**.

*She's not as scary as she seems.*



Ben never told us he could tap dance. He is such **a dark horse**.

*someone who hides a surprising skill or quality*



## 4.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

Jim's **a good egg**. He helped me to move last week.

*an honest, reliable, or considerate person*



Hassan is **the salt of the earth**. I saw him help an old lady cross the road.

*kind, honest, and unpretentious*



Debbie's **a tough cookie**. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work.

*determined and physically or emotionally strong*



Kirsty remained **as cool as a cucumber** throughout her performance.

*calm and relaxed*





## 4.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Ben never told us he could tap dance. He is such a dark sheep.

☐

Ben never told us he could tap dance. He is such a dark horse.

☒


It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a barrel of laughs.

☐

It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a tub of laughs.

☐


Bob is such a crying baby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score.

☐

Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score.

☐


Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bite is worse than her bark.

☐

Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bark is worse than her bite.

☐


Jim's a good egg. He helped me to move last week.

☐

Jim's a good cheese. He helped me to move last week.

☐


Gustav has a selfish streak. He won't share his cookies with his friends.

☐

Gustav has a selfish line. He won't share his cookies with his friends.

☐


Debbie's a tough cake. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work.

☐

Debbie's a tough cookie. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work.

☐


## 4.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A Lucia has a vivid imagination. Her artworks are so original.

☐

B Chetan is as bold as brass. He walked up to the actor and asked for an autograph.

☐

C My uncle's a lone wolf. He lives on his own in a cabin in the forest.

☐

D Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score.

☐

E I know Rex looks a bit scary, but he wouldn't hurt a fly.

☐

F Zoe loves proving how much she knows. She's too smart for her own good.

☐

G Claire is a social butterfly. She's always going to parties.

☐

H Kirsty remained as cool as a cucumber throughout her performance.

☐

Aa

## 4.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



My dad's just an average Joe. He enjoys burgers and fries, and he loves watching baseball.

1



Hassan is the salt of the earth. I saw him help an old lady cross the road.

2



Noah is really down to earth. He earns lots of money, but he lives in a little cottage.

3



Arturo is so two-faced. He said he liked my haircut but told his friends he hated it.

4



Tony wouldn't say boo to a goose. He gets really shy when he talks to customers.

5



Norah is such a fuddy-duddy. She never wants to come out with us on Saturday night.

Aa

## 4.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

someone who is unwilling to try new things

=

*a fuddy-duddy*

1 She's not as scary as she seems.

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 calm and relaxed

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 very confident

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 a fun person or situation

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 is completely harmless

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 05 Good things

## 5.1 IDIOMS FOR PRAISING THINGS

My kids think this TV show is **the best thing since sliced bread**.

*extremely good*



Marcelo **stole the show** with his amazing singing.

*was the best, or attracted the most praise*



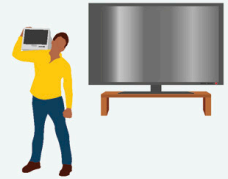
The ice cream at Giuseppe's parlor really is **the bee's knees**!

*the very best*



My new TV is **miles ahead of** my old one.

*much more advanced than*



The workmen have done a **first-class** job on our kitchen. It looks beautiful.

*superb*



The view from the top of the mountain is totally **out of this world**. You can see for miles.

*amazing*



Francisco **thinks the world of** his grandson. He loves spending time with him.

*really likes or admires*



**World-class** athletes need to train for a few hours every day.

*among the best in the world*



We had a wonderful boat trip. **The icing on the cake** was seeing some dolphins.

*the best part of a good experience*



Elisa just moved into the house **of her dreams**. It's a fabulous lakeside villa.

*that she has fantasized about having*





Walking to work gives me **the best of both worlds**. It helps me save money and get fit.

*the benefits of two different things at the same time*



Losing my office job was **a blessing in disguise**. My new job is much more interesting.

*something that seems bad, but is actually good*



Chan's store only sells watches that are **top of the line**. (US)

*the best quality*



The burgers in Max's diner are **to die for**. And they're huge!

*amazing*



The gallery has a **mind-blowing** collection of modern art.

*amazing*



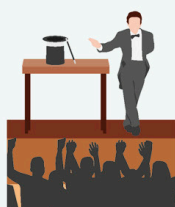
Laura's play has received **rave reviews**. The critics loved it!

*excellent reviews*



Javier's performance will be **a tough act to follow**. It was incredible.

*difficult to beat*



Abel is a **top-notch** reporter. He's interviewed some really famous actors.

*highest quality*



The **crème de la crème** of the fashion world were at the launch party.

*the very best people*



Karolina's cake is **second to none**. It looks beautiful, and it tastes delicious.

*far better than any others*



## 5.2 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

follow

a

act

tough

to

Javier's performance will be a tough act to follow . It was incredible.

best

sliced

the

thing

bread

since

1 My kids think this TV show is \_\_\_\_\_ .

cake

The

the

icing

on

2 We had a wonderful boat trip. \_\_\_\_\_ was seeing some dolphins.

line

of

top

the

3 Chan's store only sells watches that are \_\_\_\_\_ .

de

crème

la

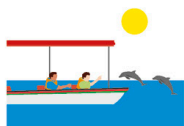
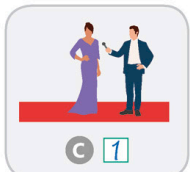
The

crème

4 \_\_\_\_\_ of the fashion world were at the launch party.



## 5.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☐ 1D ☐E ☐F ☐

## 5.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

top of

of both worlds

1 out of

to none

2 the best

the line

3 second

knees

4 stole the

this world

5 the crème de

in disguise

6 the bee's

la crème

7 a blessing

show

Aa

## 5.5 MATCH THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

1

top-notch

2

the icing on the cake

3

rave reviews

4

thinks the world of

5

of her dreams

second to none

excellent reviews

really likes or admires

far better than any others

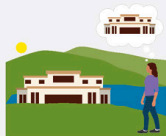
that she has fantasized about having

the best part of a good experience

highest quality

Aa

## 5.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Elisa just moved into the house of her dreams. It's a fabulous lakeside villa.



1 \_\_\_\_\_ athletes need to train for a few hours every day.



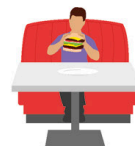
2 Marcelo \_\_\_\_\_ with his amazing singing.



3 \_\_\_\_\_ of the fashion world were at the launch party.



4 Walking to work gives me \_\_\_\_\_. It helps me save money and get fit.



5 The burgers in Max's diner are \_\_\_\_\_. And they're huge!

# 06 Bad things

## 6.1 IDIOMS FOR CRITICIZING THINGS

Pete's habit of dropping litter  
**leaves a bad taste in my mouth.**

*makes me feel very uncomfortable*



The weather in Hawaii **didn't live up to expectations.** It rained every day.

*was not as good as expected*



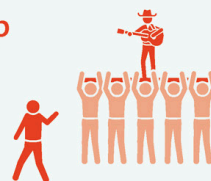
The clothes in this store are **second rate.** They don't last very long.

*low-quality*



Country music is **not my cup of tea.** I prefer rock music.

*not something I enjoy*



I'm afraid this product just **isn't up to scratch,** Kyle. (UK)

*isn't good enough*



Noah's old car is **past its prime.** He's been driving it for years.

*in a bad condition, or too old*



I know everyone else loves it,  
but this book is **not all that it's cracked up to be.**

*not as good as everyone says it is*



The museum in my town is **nothing to write home about.** There are very few exhibits.

*not very impressive*



The hotel was **cheap and nasty.** There were cockroaches in my room. (UK)

*affordable but low-quality*



I was stuck in traffic for three hours on a boiling hot day. It was **a fate worse than death!**

*a very unpleasant experience*



Marco's suit **has seen better days**.  
He should buy a new one.

*is in a bad condition*



Watching golf on TV is so boring.  
It's **like watching paint dry**.

*extremely boring*



His voice is OK, but he's **not going to set the world on fire**.

*not going to be very exciting or successful*



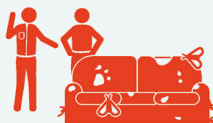
It's still **rough around the edges**,  
but this is my design for the park.

*not perfect; in need of more work*



It's time you got rid of that **moth-eaten**  
old sofa of yours.

*shabby; in a bad condition*



Rita's TV is **on its last legs**. She's  
had it for over 10 years.

*likely to stop working soon*



I told my roommate to move out.  
**The last straw** was when she broke  
my favorite mug.

*the last in a series of events that makes a bad situation impossible to tolerate*



We had been really looking forward  
to the meal, but thought the food  
was **a let-down**.

*a disappointment*



Sales **fell short of expectations**  
last month. We need to do  
better this month.

*were not as good as expected*



My old desktop computer is  
**past its sell-by date**. It takes a  
long time to start up.

*in need of replacing*



Aa

## 6.2 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

- |   |                                   |                                |
|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|   | makes me feel very uncomfortable  | past its sell-by date          |
| 1 | affordable but low-quality        | like watching paint dry        |
| 2 | extremely boring                  | leaves a bad taste in my mouth |
| 3 | in need of replacing              | cheap and nasty                |
| 4 | a very unpleasant experience      | rough around the edges         |
| 5 | not something I enjoy             | a fate worse than death        |
| 6 | not perfect; in need of more work | not my cup of tea              |

Aa

## 6.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Marco's suit has seen better **days** / ~~times~~ / ~~years~~. He should buy a new one.



1 The museum in my town is nothing to **write** / **call** / **go** home about. There are very few exhibits.



2 The weather in Hawaii didn't **get** / **go** / **live** up to expectations. It rained every day.



3 Rita's TV is on its last **feet** / **legs** / **stand**. She's had it for over 10 years.



4 The clothes in this store are second **class** / **quality** / **rate**. They don't last very long.



5 Pete's habit of dropping litter leaves a bad **flavor** / **taste** / **meal** in my mouth.





## 6.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



It's still rough around the edges, but this is my design for the park.



3 I know everyone else loves it, but this book is \_\_\_\_\_.



1 I told my roommate to move out. \_\_\_\_\_ was when she broke my favorite mug.



4 I'm afraid this product just \_\_\_\_\_, Kyle.



2 Sales \_\_\_\_\_ last month. We need to do better this month.



5 His voice is OK, but he's \_\_\_\_\_.

## Aa

## 6.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

not something I enjoy

= n o t m y c u p o f t e a

1 shabby; in a bad condition

= m \_\_\_\_\_ - e \_\_\_\_\_

2 a disappointment

= a l \_\_\_\_\_ - d \_\_\_\_\_

3 in a bad condition, or too old

= p \_\_\_\_\_ i \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_

4 low-quality

= s \_\_\_\_\_ r \_\_\_\_\_

5 affordable but low-quality

= c \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_

# 07 Animals

## 7.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

Tim is such a **scaredy-cat**. He's terrified of spiders.

*a person who is very easily scared*



I don't think you're really too sick to go to school. You always **cry wolf**.

*pretend there's danger or something wrong when there isn't*



Clarita's new apartment is tiny. There's **not enough room to swing a cat**.

*very little space*



My colleagues all have terrible colds. They're **dropping like flies**!

*becoming sick, or stopping doing something, in large numbers*



You're **barking up the wrong tree** if you think I can help you with your homework. I'm terrible at science.

*wasting effort by following the wrong course of action*



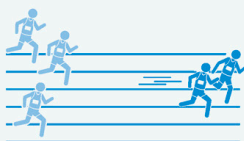
Our falling profits are **the elephant in the room** at every team meeting.

*a problem that everyone pretends to ignore*



The half-mile run was a **two-horse race** between Beatriz and Maria.

*a competition with only two clear possible winners*



I **chickened out** of diving off the top board in the pool. It was too high!

*was too scared to*



Flo looked **like a deer in headlights** when I caught her reading my diary. (US)

*too shocked or frightened to move*



I told my boss I won't finish my report today, but she still keeps **badgering me** about it.

*repeatedly telling me to do something*





Lech is **a night owl**. He never goes to bed before midnight.

*someone who likes to stay up late at night*



Bill looked **like the cat that got the cream** when he won the competition.

*very happy, proud, or satisfied*



It really **gets my goat** when someone eats smelly food on the train.

*irritates me*



We had **a bird's-eye view** of the city from the hot-air balloon.

*a long-distance view from above*



Rachel always **gets on her high horse** about being a vegetarian. It's so annoying!

*adopts a morally superior attitude*



You can do anything now that you've finished college. **The world is your oyster**.

*You have lots of opportunities.*



Frank ate **the lion's share** of the cake. There wasn't enough for us!

*the largest part*



Ruby is **a one-trick pony**. She's a great singer, but she can't dance or act.

*someone with only one talent or skill*



I tried to fix the photocopier, but I've really **made a pig's ear of it**. (UK)

*done it very badly*



Jenny didn't mind when her friends laughed at her coat. It was **water off a duck's back**.

*not at all upsetting*





## 7.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A I don't think you're really too sick to go to school. You always cry wolf. ☐
- B Lech is a night owl. He never goes to bed before midnight. ☐
- C Frank ate the lion's share of the cake. There wasn't enough for us! ☐
- D Jenny didn't mind when her friends laughed at her coat. It was water off a duck's back. ☐
- E I told my boss I won't finish my report today, but she still keeps badgering me about it. ☒ 1
- F The half-mile run was a two-horse race between Beatriz and Maria. ☐

Aa

## 7.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



You're barking up the wrong tree if you think I can help you with your homework. I'm terrible at science.



Jenny didn't mind when her friends laughed at her coat. It was water off a duck's back.



It really gets my goat when someone eats smelly food on the train.



Our falling profits are the elephant in the room at every team meeting.



Rachel always gets on her high horse about being a vegetarian. It's so annoying!



Bill looked like the cat that got the cream when he won the competition.

## 7.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Frank ate the lion's / ~~tiger's~~ / ~~bear's~~ share of the cake. There wasn't enough for us!



1 I tried to fix the photocopier, but I've really made a cow's / sheep's / pig's ear of it.



2 My colleagues all have terrible colds. They're dropping / falling / buzzing like flies!



3 Ruby is a one-trick horse / pony / donkey. She's a great singer, but she can't dance or act.



4 I pigged / chickened / cowed out of diving off the top board in the pool. It was too high!



5 Clarita's new apartment is tiny. There's not enough room to swing a mouse / frog / cat.

## 7.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

someone with only one talent or skill

=

a one-trick pony

1 irritates me

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 very little space

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 a long-distance view from above

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 a person who is very easily scared

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 You have lots of opportunities.

=

\_\_\_\_\_

6 too shocked or frightened to move

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 08 Food

## 8.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD AND DRINK

We thought our walk would be really hilly, but the land was **as flat as a pancake**.

*very flat*



I don't like my job, but it **puts food on the table**.

*provides enough money to pay for the most important things*



We're usually **packed like sardines** on the bus to work in the morning.

*standing very close to each other*



Sharon always **spoon-feeds** her staff. She tells them exactly what to do.

*gives too much help to*



Our boss tried to **sugarcoat** the news that we wouldn't get a bonus by saying we'd have a summer party.

*make something bad sound better than it is*



Don't get so upset about burning the cookies. It's no use **crying over spilled milk**.

*getting upset about something that has already happened*



Jennifer is such **a couch potato**. She never goes out and watches TV all weekend instead.

*a lazy person who watches too much television*



Damien makes coffee for his boss every morning. He **knows what side his bread is buttered on!**

*knows who to please in order to benefit himself*



My granddaughter is **the apple of my eye**. I'm so proud of her.

*a person I am very fond or proud of*



I don't know whether to apply for this job. It looks really interesting, but **it pays peanuts**.

*the wage or salary is very low*



I bought so many clothes that I can't afford a vacation. I suppose **you can't have your cake and eat it, too.**

*you can't enjoy the benefits of something without its disadvantages*



I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding **takes the cake!** (US)

*is particularly bad*



I felt **warm and toasty** sitting in front of the fire. (US)

*very warm and comfortable*



Asher is such a **butterfingers**. He is always dropping things.

*a clumsy person who often drops things*



The head of sales said he would double our profits, so he had to **eat humble pie** when he told us they had fallen.

*publicly admit to being wrong or having failed*



Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just **sour grapes**.

*a jealous and bitter attitude*



I'm really stressed! I think I **bit off more than I could chew** when I took this promotion.

*took on more responsibility than I could manage*



I wanted Jo to water my plants when I was on vacation, so I **battered her up** by saying her backyard looked nice.

*praised or flattered her so she would do me a favor*



Copies of Sadie's new novel are **selling like hotcakes** after it got great reviews.

*selling quickly in large numbers*



You have to **walk on eggshells** around Dylan. He gets upset so easily.

*be very careful not to cause offense*











Aa

## 8.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
|   | Sharon always spoon-feeds her staff.        | on the bus to work in the morning.     |
| 1 | We're usually packed like sardines          | but the land was as flat as a pancake. |
| 2 | My granddaughter is the apple of my eye.    | She tells them exactly what to do.     |
| 3 | We thought our walk would be really hilly,  | He gets upset so easily.               |
| 4 | I felt warm and toasty                      | I'm so proud of her.                   |
| 5 | I don't like my job,                        | sitting in front of the fire.          |
| 6 | You have to walk on eggshells around Dylan. | but it puts food on the table.         |

Aa

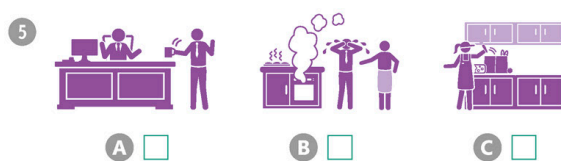
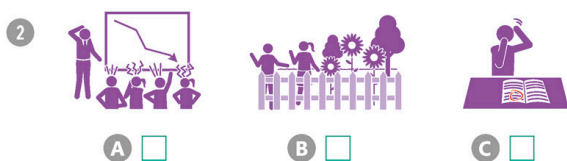
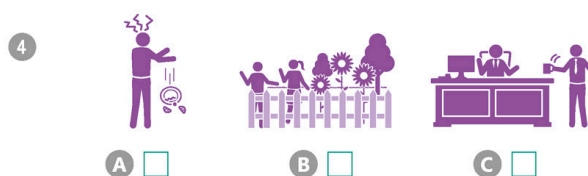
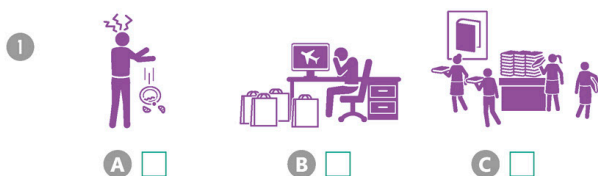
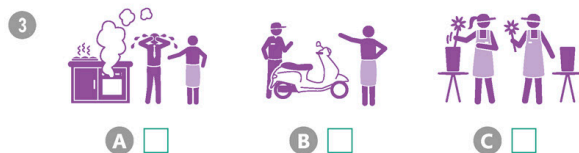
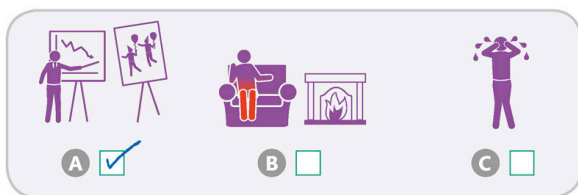
## 8.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- |   |   |                                     |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|
|      | Don't get so upset about burning the cookies. It's no use crying over spilled water.      | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Don't get so upset about burning the cookies. It's no use crying over spilled milk.       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 1  | I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the bread!        | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the cake!         | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 2  | I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could chew when I took this promotion. | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could eat when I took this promotion.  | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 3  | Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just sour grapes.             | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just bitter grapes.           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 4  | Asher is such a butterhands. He is always dropping things.                                | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Asher is such a butterfingers. He is always dropping things.                              | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| 5  | Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotbuns after it got great reviews.          | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
|   | Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotcakes after it got great reviews.         | <input type="checkbox"/>            |





## 8.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



Aa

## 8.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

took on more responsibility than I could manage

= bit off more than I could chew

1 publicly admit to being wrong or having failed

= \_\_\_\_\_

2 a lazy person who watches too much television

= \_\_\_\_\_

3 gives too much help to

= \_\_\_\_\_

4 be very careful not to cause offense

= \_\_\_\_\_

5 make something bad sound better than it is

= \_\_\_\_\_

## 9.1 AGREEMENT AND UNDERSTANDING

We're **on the same page** about who should get this job.

*in agreement*



It's great to work with the creative people in this team. We're all **on the same wavelength**.

*similar in terms of thoughts, ideas, or attitude*



Fran's dad **gave her the thumbs-up** to go out with her friends.

*gave her permission*



Samira has been **given the go-ahead** to play tennis after her injury.

*given permission or approval*



The government has **given the green light** to the construction of a new train station.

*given permission for*



I'm glad my boss and I **see eye to eye** about recycling in the office.

*agree fully or have a similar attitude*



## 9.3 COMPROMISE

We **struck a deal** with the clients after we offered them a discount.

*reached an agreement*



Diana and I **reached a compromise** about what movie to watch tonight.

*came to an agreement*



We found **the middle ground** about how much to spend on our new car.

*a position between two different opinions, or a compromise*



My son wanted to stay out all night. I **met him halfway** and let him stay out until midnight.

*made a compromise*



## 9.2 DISAGREEMENT AND CONFLICT

Nelson and Carole are **at odds** about which car to buy.

*unable to agree*



My girlfriend and I have **agreed to disagree** about what to do on vacation.

*accepted each other's differing opinion*



My wife **read me the riot act** for forgetting to lock the door again.

*severely reprimanded me*



Don **jumped down my throat** when I suggested he clean the kitchen.

*reacted angrily*



Who takes the dog for a walk is **a bone of contention** for our kids.

*a subject that people argue about regularly*



Lenka and I **fought like cats and dogs** when we were children.

*argued all the time*



The negotiating teams stayed up all night **hammering out a deal**.

*reaching an agreement after a long discussion*



I tried to **smooth things over** between Pari and Toni after their argument.

*make a problem or conflict feel less serious*



My neighbor and I have **buried the hatchet** after arguing about the parking.

*ended an argument that has lasted a long time*



After arguing with Dan, Cy **held out an olive branch** and bought him a drink.

*did something to end a conflict*



Aa

## 9.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

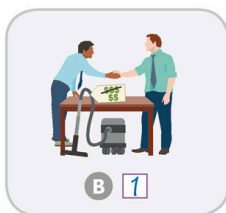
I'm glad my boss and I **see face to face** about recycling in the office.

*I'm glad my boss and I see eye to eye about recycling in the office.*

- 1 My neighbor and I have **buried the ax** after arguing about the parking.
- 2 The negotiating teams stayed up all night **drilling out a deal**.
- 3 The government has **given the red light to** the construction of a new train station.
- 4 My girlfriend and I have **agreed to change** about what to do on vacation.



## 9.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☒C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐I ☐

Aa

## 9.6 READ THE LETTER AND CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS

Hi Fiona,  
 How are you? I had some problems at work recently. My boss and I are usually on the same **page** / ~~sheet~~ about work, but we were at **offs** / **odds** about my hours. She jumped down my **mouth** / **throat** when I said I couldn't work this weekend. We found the **middle** / **central** ground when I agreed to stay late on Friday.  
 See you soon,  
 Pablo

Aa

## 9.7 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Fran's dad gave her the thumbs-up to go out with her friends.

1



My son wanted to stay out all night. I met him halfway and let him stay out until midnight.

2



Lenka and I fought like cats and dogs when we were children.

3



Diana and I reached a compromise about what movie to watch tonight.

4



Samira has been given the go-ahead to play tennis after her injury.

5



I tried to smooth things over between Pari and Toni after their argument.

Aa

## 9.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

reacted angrily

= j u m p e d d o w n m y t h r o a t

1 did something to end a conflict

= h \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_ a \_ o \_ \_ \_ b \_ \_ \_ \_

2 in agreement

= o \_ t \_ \_ s \_ \_ \_ p \_ \_ \_

3 unable to agree

= a \_ o \_ \_ \_

4 reached an agreement

= s \_ \_ \_ \_ a d \_ \_ \_

5 gave her permission

= g \_ \_ \_ h \_ \_ t \_ \_ t \_ \_ \_ \_ - u \_



# 10 Behavior

## 10.1 SYMPATHY AND KINDNESS

Yulia offered to **lend a hand** with the dishes after the party.

*help*



I really **feel for** Mario. He has to work so hard in the kitchen.

*sympathize with*



Semir is **generous to a fault**. He invited us into his home for a wonderful meal.

*extremely generous*



Yoshiko **offered a sympathetic ear** when my cat went missing.

*offered to listen to someone's problems*



Alex is so **big hearted**. She bought me a beautiful vase for my new apartment.

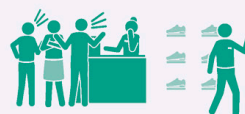
*kind and generous*



## 10.2 TREATING PEOPLE BADLY

Pedro quit his job at the store, **leaving me in the lurch**.

*leaving me to deal with a difficult situation*



Phil **gave me a hard time** about being late for work again.

*made me feel guilty, or told me off*



The boss makes the trainees stay until 11 most nights. She **treats them like dirt**!

*treats them very badly*



Laughing at Sandy's new dress was **below the belt**.

*unnecessarily cruel or unkind*



Selma **let us down** when she canceled the concert at the last minute.

*disappointed us, or failed to support us*





### 10.3 TEASING PEOPLE

Paulina **poked fun at** Mirek's new hairstyle.

*laughed at or made jokes about*



My friends **ribbed me** for having such an old phone. (US)

*teased me*



Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was **pulling my leg**.

*joking, or telling an untrue story for fun*



Brad loves **playing practical jokes** on his brother.

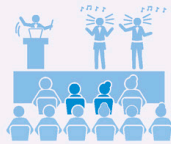
*playing tricks on people to make them look foolish*



### 10.4 EXPRESSIONS WITH "BEHAVE" AND "BEHAVIOR"

The children were very **well behaved** during the performance.

*polite or obedient*



My dog **behaved beautifully** when I took him on the train.

*behaved perfectly*



Henry can't control his **badly behaved** students.

*naughty or disobedient*



I was **on my best behavior** when I met my boyfriend's parents.

*behaving extremely well or politely*



Jean **behaved out of character** at the office party. She's normally so quiet!

*behaved in an unusual way*



Margo explained to her daughter that drawing on the walls was **unacceptable behavior**.

*bad or offensive behavior*



Aa

## 10.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Phil gave me a hard time about being late for work again.



Phil gave me a nasty time about being late for work again.



1 Yoshiko offered a sympathetic listen when my cat went missing.



Yoshiko offered a sympathetic ear when my cat went missing.



2 Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my leg.



Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my arm.



3 I was on my best behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents.



I was on my good behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents.



4 Pedro quit his job at the store, leaving me in the dumps.



Pedro quit his job at the store, leaving me in the lurch.



5 Jean behaved out of character at the office party. She's normally so quiet!



Jean behaved out of person at the office party. She's normally so quiet!



6 Paulina poked laughs at Mirek's new hairstyle.



Paulina poked fun at Mirek's new hairstyle.



Aa

## 10.6 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

## GOOD BEHAVIOR

*generous to a fault*

## BAD BEHAVIOR

below the belt

~~generous to a fault~~

big hearted

treats them like dirt

behaved beautifully

let us down

unacceptable behavior

lend a hand



## 10.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A The children were very well behaved during the performance. ☐
- B Laughing at Sandy's new dress was below the belt. ☐
- C Selma let us down when she canceled the concert at the last minute. ☐
- D Margo explained to her daughter that drawing on the walls was unacceptable behavior. ☒ 1
- E Yulia offered to lend a hand with the dishes after the party. ☐

Aa

## 10.8 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Laughing at Sandy's new dress was below  
the belt.



3 My friends \_\_\_\_\_  
for having such an old phone.



1 Henry can't control his \_\_\_\_\_  
students.



4 My dog \_\_\_\_\_ when  
I took him on the train.



2 I really \_\_\_\_\_ Mario. He has  
to work so hard in the kitchen.



5 Brad loves \_\_\_\_\_  
on his brother.

# 11 Emotions

## 11.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE BODY

They can't stop arguing. They're always **at each other's throats**.

*very aggressive and argumentative with each other*



You can always tell when he's upset. He **wears his heart on his sleeve**.

*makes his feelings obvious*



Caitlin **got cold feet** about singing karaoke.

*became too nervous to do something*



Leo **cried his eyes out** when I said he couldn't have another cookie.

*cried uncontrollably*



It was **a weight off my shoulders** when Mark found my cat. She had been missing for a week.

*a huge relief*



People in my town are **up in arms** about plans to build a new supermarket.

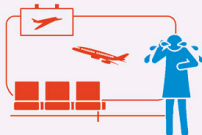
*very angry, or protesting against something*



## 11.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT COLORS

Liz was **feeling blue** when her best friend left the country.

*feeling sad*



My neighbor **saw red** when I parked in front of his house.

*became angry*



I was **green with envy** when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!

*very jealous*



Silvio went **as white as a sheet** when he got the bad news.

*very pale because of shock or fear*



When Dylan copied her homework, Zoe was so angry that she was **foaming at the mouth**.

*extremely angry*



After a long week at work, I **let my hair down** at my best friend's party.

*relaxed and enjoyed myself*



I was **broken-hearted** when my girlfriend left me.

*very upset, usually after the end of a romantic relationship*



I get **itchy feet** when I haven't been abroad for a long time.

*boredom with being in the same place or situation*



I became **tongue-tied** when I had to give a presentation to the board of directors.

*too nervous to speak*



I was really upset when a customer shouted at me, but I managed to **keep a stiff upper lip**.

*appear calm despite being upset*



### 11.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

The children all **went bananas** when I took them to the playground.

*were out of control with excitement*



This terrible weather is **driving me nuts**.

*annoying me*



Akio was **full of beans** when he started his new job at the salon.

*very excited and enthusiastic*



I **had egg on my face** after I called Jo's new boyfriend Ben. That was her ex-boyfriend's name!

*was embarrassed*





## 11.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I was **yellow with envy** when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!



I was green with envy when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!

- 1 I get **itchy legs** when I haven't been abroad for a long time.



- 2 Liz was **feeling green** when her best friend left the country.



- 3 When Dylan copied her homework, Zoe was so angry that she was **foaming at the lips**.



- 4 This terrible weather is **driving me fruit**.



- 5 My neighbor **saw purple** when I parked in front of his house.



## 11.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- |   |   |                                       |
|---|---|---------------------------------------|
| A | I became tongue-tied when I had to give a presentation to the board of directors.         | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| B | They can't stop arguing. They're always at each other's throats.                          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 |
| C | It was a weight off my shoulders when Mark found my cat. She had been missing for a week. | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| D | I was green with envy when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!                 | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| E | The children all went bananas when I took them to the playground.                         | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| F | Leo cried his eyes out when I said he couldn't have another cookie.                       | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| G | You can always tell when he's upset. He wears his heart on his sleeve.                    | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| H | Akio was full of beans when he started his new job at the salon.                          | <input type="checkbox"/>              |



Aa

## 11.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

People in my town are up in arms

1 I was broken-hearted

2 I get itchy feet when I haven't

3 Caitlin got cold feet

4 The children all went bananas

5 My neighbor saw red

when my girlfriend left me.

been abroad for a long time.

about plans to build a new supermarket.

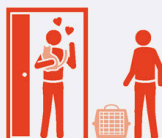
when I parked in front of his house.

about singing karaoke.

when I took them to the playground.

Aa

## 11.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



It was a weight off my shoulders when Mark found my cat. She had been missing for a week.



1 I \_\_\_\_\_ after I called Jo's new boyfriend Ben. That was her ex-boyfriend's name!



2 After a long week at work, I \_\_\_\_\_ at my best friend's party.



3 Silvio went \_\_\_\_\_ when he got the bad news.



4 I was really upset when a customer shouted at me, but I managed to \_\_\_\_\_.



5 Leo \_\_\_\_\_ when I said he couldn't have another cookie.

# 12 Positive emotions

## 12.1 HAPPINESS

Clare was **on cloud nine** after she was promoted.

*delighted, extremely happy*



Jack was **on top of the world** when his team won the trophy.

*delighted, extremely happy*



Dan **grinned from ear to ear** when he read his test results.

*smiled with extreme happiness*



The news that our profits were up was **music to our ears**.

*wonderful news*



I was **over the moon** when I won the best actor award.

*delighted, extremely happy*



Anne is **head over heels** with that boy she met at the festival.

*very much in love*



## 12.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "JOY"

My motorcycle is **my pride and joy**. I clean it every day.

*something that makes me happy and is important to me*



The kids **jumped for joy** when I brought our new puppy home.

*were extremely happy*



Brendan **wept with joy** when he won the talent competition.

*cried with happiness*



The sight of the park in spring is **a joy to behold**.

*wonderful to look at*



## 12.3 ENTHUSIASM

Two minutes before the race, the athletes were all **raring to go**.

*eager to start doing something*



Salvador loves cooking. He **puts his heart and soul into** it.

*puts a lot of effort and enthusiasm into*



Our new intern is such an **eager beaver**. She works really hard.

*an enthusiastic person*



Robbie has **flung himself into** training for the gymnastics competition.

*done something with lots of enthusiasm and energy*



Clara was **bright-eyed and bushy-tailed** as she set off on the hike.

*full of enthusiasm and energy*



## 12.4 EXCITEMENT

I was **on the edge of my seat** as the detective revealed the murderer.

*waiting with nervous excitement*



We waited **with bated breath** for the judge to announce the winner.

*with both anxiety and enthusiasm*



The children were **bouncing off the walls** after a whole day indoors.

*too excited and full of energy*



Sally was **bursting with excitement** as her favorite band came on stage.

*extremely excited*



Jamal **had butterflies in his stomach** as he waited for his date outside the restaurant.

*was excited and nervous*



## 12.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Jack was on top of the ~~earth~~ / ~~world~~ / ~~planet~~ when his team won the trophy.

- 1 The news that our profits were up was ~~singing~~ / ~~noise~~ / ~~music~~ to our ears.
- 2 Our new intern is such an ~~eager~~ / ~~enthusiastic~~ / ~~able~~ beaver. She works really hard.
- 3 I was over the ~~moon~~ / ~~world~~ / ~~stars~~ when I won the best actor award.
- 4 Salvador loves cooking. He puts his ~~mind~~ / ~~heart~~ / ~~strength~~ and soul into it.
- 5 I was on the edge of my ~~chair~~ / ~~stool~~ / ~~seat~~ as the detective revealed the murderer.



## 12.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



We waited with bated breath for the judge to announce the winner.



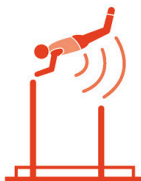
- 3 My motorcycle is \_\_\_\_\_.  
I clean it every day.



- 1 The kids \_\_\_\_\_ when I brought our new puppy home.



- 4 Jamal \_\_\_\_\_ as he waited for his date outside the restaurant.



- 2 Robbie has \_\_\_\_\_ training for the gymnastics competition.



- 5 Clara was \_\_\_\_\_ as she set off on the hike.

Aa

## 12.7 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

ear ear from grinned to  
 Dan grinned from ear to ear when he read his test results.

the off walls bouncing  
 1 The children were \_\_\_\_\_ after a whole day indoors.

ears to music our  
 2 The news that our profits were up was \_\_\_\_\_.

world of on the top  
 3 Jack was \_\_\_\_\_ when his team won the trophy.

the my edge seat on of  
 4 I was \_\_\_\_\_ as the detective revealed the murderer.

a behold joy to  
 5 The sight of the park in spring is \_\_\_\_\_.

Aa

## 12.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

too excited and full of energy = b o u n c i n g o f f t h e w a l l s

1 extremely excited = b \_\_\_\_\_ w \_\_\_\_\_ e \_\_\_\_\_

2 delighted, extremely happy = o \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_

3 very much in love = h \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_

4 cried with happiness = w \_\_\_\_\_ w \_\_\_\_\_ j \_\_\_\_\_

5 eager to start doing something = r \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ g \_\_\_\_\_

# 13 Negative emotions

## 13.1 SADNESS

Joseph has been **down in the dumps** since his girlfriend left him.

*feeling sad*



Yannis **had a lump in his throat** when he said goodbye to his son.

*felt like he was going to cry*



It was **with a heavy heart** that I decided to leave my job at the gallery.

*with sadness*



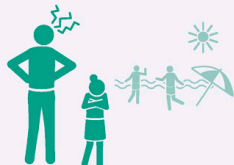
Carlos was **reduced to tears** when Marta was mean about his cooking.

*upset enough to cry*



I've taken you for a day out at the beach. Why are you being such **a downer?** (US)

*a grumpy and disagreeable person*



## 13.2 ANGER

It **makes my blood boil** when people litter.

*makes me really angry*



Jason's loud music is really **driving me crazy.**

*annoying me*



I **kicked myself** when I realized I had left my bag on the train.

*was angry with myself*



Dad **hit the roof** when he heard I'd failed my tests again.

*quickly became extremely angry*



Our boss is **on the warpath** about people leaving their computers on overnight.

*angry and ready for conflict*





### 13.3 FEAR

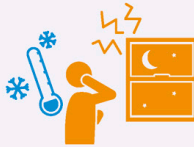
Jen got **that sinking feeling** when she realized she had lost her keys.

*the feeling that something bad is going to happen*



**My blood ran cold** when I heard a strange noise outside.

*I suddenly felt very afraid*



The sight of the old, spooky house **made my hair stand on end**.

*made me terrified*



That horror movie **sent shivers down my spine**. It was so scary!

*made me feel very frightened*



Christine felt **on edge** as she waited to see her dentist.

*nervous or anxious*



Alice was **shaking in her boots** before she did her first bungee jump. (US)

*very frightened and nervous*



### 13.4 EMBARRASSMENT

Stella **lost face** when she got the figures wrong in her presentation.

*lost respect, or felt embarrassed*



I **almost died of shame** when my girlfriend found me singing in front of the mirror.

*was extremely embarrassed*



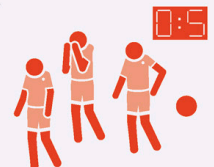
Nina **wanted the earth to swallow her up** when her dad showed her boyfriend pictures of her as a baby.

*wanted to escape an embarrassing situation*



The players left the field **with their tails between their legs** after losing the game.

*looking embarrassed or ashamed*



## Aa 13.5 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Dad hit the roof when he heard I'd failed my tests again.

Dad was happy. ☐

Dad was angry. ☒

Dad was excited. ☐

- 1 Yannis had a lump in his throat when he said goodbye to his son.

Yannis was sad. ☐

Yannis was angry. ☐

Yannis was afraid. ☐

- 2 I almost died of shame when my girlfriend found me singing in front of the mirror.

I was sad. ☐

I was angry. ☐

I was embarrassed. ☐

- 3 It was with a heavy heart that I decided to leave my job at the gallery.

I was sad. ☐

I was angry. ☐

I was afraid. ☐

- 4 My blood ran cold when I heard a strange noise outside.

I was angry. ☐

I was afraid. ☐

I was embarrassed. ☐

- 5 The players left the field with their tails between their legs after losing the game.

They were afraid. ☐

They were angry. ☐

They were ashamed. ☐



## 13.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



A ☒



B ☐



C ☐

1



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

2



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

3



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

4



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

5



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

## Aa 13.7 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The sight of the old, spooky house made my hair stand on end.



I almost died of shame when my girlfriend found me singing in front of the mirror.



It makes my blood boil when people litter.



That horror movie sent shivers down my spine. It was so scary!



Alice was shaking in her boots before she did her first bungee jump.

## Aa 13.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

made me terrified

=

*made my hair stand on end*

1 a grumpy and disagreeable person

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 angry and ready for conflict

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 upset enough to cry

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 the feeling that something bad is going to happen

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 wanted to escape an embarrassing situation

=

\_\_\_\_\_

6 was angry with myself

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 14 Memory

## 14.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT MEMORY

The answer to the teacher's question was **on the tip of my tongue**.

*almost but not quite remembered*



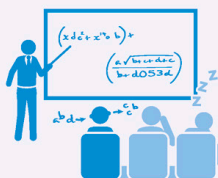
I can't believe I forgot to bring the sandwiches! I've got **a memory like a sieve**.

*a poor practical memory*



That boring lecture **went in one ear and out the other!**

*was very easy to forget*



**Memories are fading** of what the world was like before TV.

*most people have forgotten*



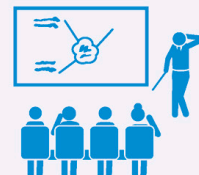
You should **keep in mind** that it gets cold in the winter and pack some warm clothes. (US)

*remember something important that might be useful later*



Jacob was explaining the diagram when he suddenly **lost his train of thought**.

*forgot the main point of what he was talking about*



When my son asked me to recommend a book, two titles **sprang to mind** immediately.

*came quickly into someone's mind*



Martha has **a photographic memory**. She copied that painting perfectly and she'd only seen it once.

*the ability to remember information or images in great detail*



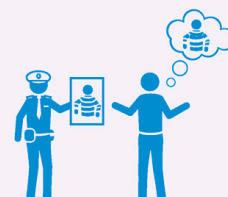
It's the worst winter **in living memory**. I've never seen so much snow.

*that anyone alive can remember*



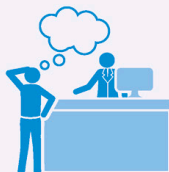
The police showed me a photo of the suspect to **jog my memory**.

*help me to remember*



When the hotel receptionist asked me for my phone number, **my mind went blank**.

*I couldn't remember anything at all*



I'm sorry I didn't get you a present. **It slipped my mind** that it was your birthday.

*I forgot*



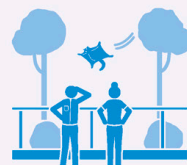
That name **rings a bell!** I think I went to college with her.

*is familiar*



I've seen that animal before, but **its name escapes me**.

*I can't remember its name*



I've been **racking my brain** all morning but can't remember where I put my passport. (US)

*thinking hard, or making an effort to remember*



I enjoyed the party, but **at the back of my mind** I knew I had to catch the last train home.

*although I tried not to think about it*



When Betty found her old teddy bear, **memories of her childhood came flooding back**.

*memories suddenly returned*



Looking at my old medals **stirred up memories** of competing in the Olympics.

*brought back memories*



Emi and Sofia **took a trip down memory lane** as they talked about their school days.

*talked about the past in a happy way*



Keeping busy at work is helping me **erase the memory of** my ex-girlfriend.

*avoid remembering or thinking about*





## 14.2 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

tip on of tongue the my

The answer to the teacher's question was on the tip of my tongue.

went one and out the ear other in

1 That boring lecture \_\_\_\_\_ !

me name its escapes

2 I've seen that animal before, but \_\_\_\_\_.

memory trip a lane took down

3 Emi and Sofia \_\_\_\_\_ as they talked about their school days.


train his thought lost of


4 Jacob was explaining the diagram when he suddenly \_\_\_\_\_.


## 14.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE




It's the worst winter in living ~~mind~~ / ~~memory~~. I've never seen so much snow.

1  You should keep in ~~mind~~ / ~~memory~~ that it gets cold in the winter and pack some warm clothes.

2  The police showed me a photo of the suspect to jog my ~~mind~~ / ~~memory~~.

3  I enjoyed the party, but at the back of my ~~mind~~ / ~~memory~~ I knew I had to catch the last train home.

4  Keeping busy at work is helping me erase the ~~mind~~ / ~~memory~~ of my ex-girlfriend.





## 14.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Looking at my old medals stirred up memories of competing in the Olympics.



1 When the hotel receptionist asked me for my phone number, \_\_\_\_\_.



2 The answer to the teacher's question was \_\_\_\_\_.



3 I'm sorry I didn't get you a present. \_\_\_\_\_ that it was your birthday.



4 I can't believe I forgot to bring the sandwiches! I've got \_\_\_\_\_.



5 \_\_\_\_\_ of what the world was like before TV.

## Aa

## 14.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

I can't remember its name

=

its name escapes me

1 the ability to remember information or images in great detail

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 memories suddenly returned

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 thinking hard, or making an effort to remember

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 is familiar

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 avoid remembering or thinking about

=

\_\_\_\_\_

6 brought back memories

=

\_\_\_\_\_

7 that anyone alive can remember

=

\_\_\_\_\_

8 came quickly into someone's mind

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 15 The body

## 15.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE BODY

Harjit **has his heart set on** getting a pet.

*wants to get or achieve something very much*



Maureen was a **bundle of nerves** before her wedding.

*extremely nervous*



When you're a parent, you need to **have eyes in the back of your head!**

*know everything that's going on around you*



Scarlett **got cold feet** about going on the rollercoaster.

*became too nervous to do something*



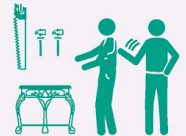
As a **rule of thumb**, it takes about 10 minutes to cook pasta.

*a general, approximate rule based on experience*



Boris deserves a **pat on the back** for making this beautiful table.

*a lot of appreciation*



**Keep your chin up!** I'm sure the weather will get better soon.

*Try to stay cheerful, even if circumstances are difficult.*



Wyatt is a good friend. He was a **shoulder to cry on** when I broke up with my girlfriend.

*a sympathetic and supportive person*



I haven't booked a restaurant for lunch, so let's **play it by ear** and find somewhere that looks nice.

*do something without planning ahead*



You've been to Bali, haven't you? Can I **pick your brain** about the best places to visit?

*ask for your opinion and advice*



Paolo **almost jumped out of his skin** when a bat flew into his room.

*was very shocked or frightened*



I can't believe Iris is starting school today. She has grown up **in the blink of an eye**.

*very quickly*



Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such **a scatterbrain**!

*a careless person who forgets things easily*



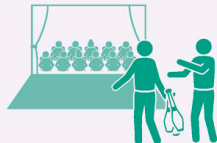
Isla has such **a sweet tooth**. She loves eating cakes.

*a liking for sweet food*



I hope the performance goes well, Adam. **Break a leg!**

*Good luck! (said before performing on stage)*



I wish Nathan would turn his music down. It's **getting on my nerves**.

*annoying me*



There's nothing to do at work at the moment. I'm just sitting here **twiddling my thumbs**.

*doing nothing*



**My heart sank** when I got to the museum and saw that it was closed.

*I felt sad and disappointed*



Our profits keep falling, but our boss is **burying his head in the sand** and not doing anything about it.

*ignoring a problem and hoping it will go away*



You have to be very **thick-skinned** when you work in this job. The customers often get angry.

*not easily upset by criticism*



## Aa 15.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |                    |             |
|--------------------|-------------|
| a rule             | of nerves   |
| 1 burying his head | my nerves   |
| 2 a bundle         | of thumb    |
| 3 getting on       | in the sand |
| 4 Keep your        | on the back |
| 5 a shoulder       | set on      |
| 6 a pat            | chin up!    |
| 7 has his heart    | to cry on   |



## 15.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐



D 1 ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐



I ☐

## Aa 15.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Keep your chin up! I'm sure the weather will get better soon.



Keep your head up! I'm sure the weather will get better soon.



- 1 I hope the performance goes well, Adam. Break a leg!  
I hope the performance goes well, Adam. Break a bone!



- 2 Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterhead!  
Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterbrain!



- 3 Isla has such a sweet tongue. She loves eating cakes.  
Isla has such a sweet tooth. She loves eating cakes.



- 4 Wyatt is a good friend. He was a shoulder to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend.  
Wyatt is a good friend. He was an arm to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend.



Aa

## 15.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| ask for your opinion and advice               | play it by ear                |
| 1 do something without planning ahead         | my heart sank                 |
| 2 I felt sad and disappointed                 | pick your brain               |
| 3 was very shocked or frightened              | has his heart set on          |
| 4 wants to get or achieve something very much | thick-skinned                 |
| 5 not easily upset by criticism               | almost jumped out of his skin |

Aa

## 15.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Boris deserves a pat on the back for making this beautiful table.



3 Scarlett \_\_\_\_\_ about going on the rollercoaster.



1 Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such \_\_\_\_\_ !



4 There's nothing to do at work at the moment. I'm just sitting here \_\_\_\_\_ .



2 When you're a parent, you need to \_\_\_\_\_ !



5 Maureen was \_\_\_\_\_ before her wedding.



# 16 War and weapons

## 16.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT WAR AND WEAPONS

I have **an ax to grind** with my roommate.  
She's always playing loud music at night.

*a grievance or dispute to take up*



I decided to **hold fire** before booking  
such an expensive holiday. (UK)

*wait before taking action*



What has been going on while we were  
away? It's **like a war zone** in here!

*very messy and chaotic*



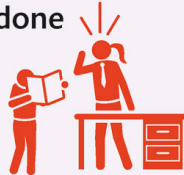
Buying a house can be **a minefield**. There's  
always so much to think about!

*a complicated process with  
lots of potential problems*



Balwant had to **bite the bullet** and  
tell his teacher that he hadn't done  
his homework.

*do something nerve-wracking*



Sonia **stuck to her guns** and told  
her daughter that she couldn't  
go to the party.

*didn't change her mind  
when faced with conflict*



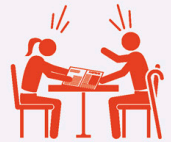
Our daughter **dropped a bombshell**  
when she told us she and her new  
boyfriend were engaged.

*delivered some shocking news*



I always end up **crossing swords** with my  
grandfather when we talk about what's  
happening in the news.

*arguing*



Trying to make my children  
eat more vegetables has  
been **an uphill battle**.

*a difficult struggle*



My boss didn't give me a promotion, and  
then **twisted the knife** when she said my  
report was full of mistakes.

*said or did something that made  
a bad situation feel worse*





Poor you! You've really  
**been in the wars!** (UK)

*suffered several injuries or misfortunes*



They were so angry with each other  
that they almost **came to blows!**

*had a fight or serious argument*



The boss is in a terrible mood today! We're  
all going to be **in the line of fire.** (US)

*likely to be criticized or  
punished (often unfairly)*



I have some very bad news, but please  
**don't shoot the messenger!**

*don't be angry with someone  
who reports bad news*



Audrey looks really stressed. I think  
I **dodged a bullet** when she got that  
promotion and I didn't.

*unintentionally avoided a situation  
that turned out to be bad*



Jerry is **a loose cannon.** We should never  
have invited him to dinner with the clients.

*someone who behaves unpredictably,  
often with bad consequences*



My supervisor **stabbed me in the back** when  
she reported me to the store manager. I  
thought she was happy with my work.

*betrayed me*



I'm going to take my lunch break  
now. Could you **hold down  
the fort** until I get back? (US)

*take care of something  
while someone is away*



I lost my phone when I was shopping.  
It's **a long shot**, but I'm going to ask if  
anyone has handed it in at the store.

*an attempt that has only  
a small chance of success*



My girlfriend **caught me off guard** when  
she said two of her friends would be  
joining us for dinner tonight.

*surprised me with something that  
I wasn't ready to deal with*



Aa

## 16.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

I have an ax to grind with my roommate.

1 They were so angry with each other

2 I decided to hold fire before

3 The boss is in a terrible mood today!

4 Poor you!

5 I have some very bad news,

that they almost came to blows!

We're all going to be in the line of fire.

She's always playing loud music at night.

booking such an expensive holiday.

but please don't shoot the messenger!

You've really been in the wars!



## 16.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR

A ☐B ☐C ☒

3

A ☐B ☐C ☐

1

A ☐B ☐C ☐

4

A ☐B ☐C ☐

2

A ☐B ☐C ☐

5

A ☐B ☐C ☐

## Aa 16.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Trying to make my children eat more vegetables has been an uphill **battle** / ~~fight~~ / ~~war~~.

1



Balwant had to bite the **gun** / **bullet** / **sword** and tell his teacher that he hadn't done his homework.

2



Buying a house can be a **bombshell** / **battle** / **minefield**. There's always so much to think about!

3



I'm going to take my lunch break now. Could you hold down the **fort** / **castle** / **moat** until I get back?

4



Our daughter dropped a **minefield** / **bomb** / **bombshell** when she told us she and her new boyfriend were engaged.

5



Sonia stuck to her **swords** / **guns** / **bombs** and told her daughter that she couldn't go to the party.

## Aa 16.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

delivered some shocking news

= d r o p p e d a b o m b s h e l l

1 betrayed me

= s \_\_\_\_\_ m i t b \_\_\_\_\_

2 a difficult struggle

= a u \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_

3 arguing

= c \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_

4 very messy and chaotic

= l \_\_\_\_\_ a w \_\_\_\_\_ z \_\_\_\_\_

5 a grievance or dispute to take up

= a a t g \_\_\_\_\_

# 17 Amount and distance

## 17.1 AMOUNT

What we've saved is just **a drop in the ocean** compared to what we need.

*a tiny amount*



Kaitlin's received **stacks of** letters from the bank, but hasn't opened them.

*a large number of*



We always take **everything but the kitchen sink** when we travel.

*almost all our belongings*



The Olympic swimming team has won **tons of** medals.

*a large number of*



I'll give you **a thousand-and-one** reasons why you shouldn't buy that house.

*a huge number of*



Rajesh has won every possible award for his movies, **give or take** one or two.

*plus or minus; apart from*



The guests began to arrive at the party **in dribs and drabs**.

*slowly and in small numbers*



Sam bought his brother's business, **lock, stock, and barrel**.

*every part of something*



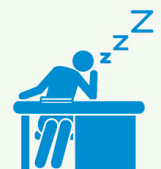
Customers were **few and far between** because of the rain.

*small in number; scarce*



I'm so tired. I got **precious little** sleep last night.

*almost no*



## 17.2 DISTANCE

Carla's school is just **a stone's throw** away from the bus stop.

*a short distance*



The castle is in **a far-flung corner** of the island. It takes hours to drive there.

*a distant, inaccessible part*



The car avoided hitting my bike by just **a hair's breadth**.

*a very short distance*



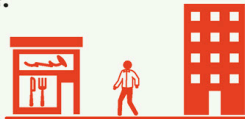
The forest stretched **as far as the eye can see**.

*into the distance*



My new apartment is **within walking distance** of my workplace.

*close enough to walk to from*



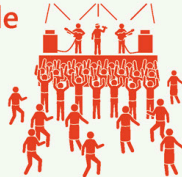
You don't need to drive to the store. It's **just around the corner**.

*a short distance away*



People came from **far and wide** to watch the rock concert.

*long distances away*



I love to travel **off the beaten path** when I'm on vacation. (US)

*to places that are less popular or difficult to reach*



Jennifer won the marathon **by a whisker**.

*by a very small amount or distance*



Sharon lives in **the middle of nowhere**. You can't get there by train.

*a place that is difficult to get to*





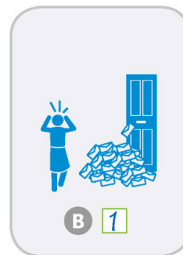
Aa

### 17.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| just around      | the kitchen sink |
| 1 a drop         | of nowhere       |
| 2 the middle     | the corner       |
| 3 everything but | beaten path      |
| 4 off the        | in the ocean     |
| 5 in dribs       | little           |
| 6 precious       | and drabs        |



### 17.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☒C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐

Aa

### 17.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

The car avoided hitting my bike by just **a hair's width**.

*The car avoided hitting my bike by just a hair's breadth.*

- 1 The guests began to arrive at the party **in dribs and drabs**.

---

- 2 My new apartment is **within running distance of** my workplace.

---

- 3 We always take **everything but the bathroom sink** when we travel.

---

- 4 The castle is in **a far-thrown corner** of the island. It takes hours to drive there.

---

- 5 Sharon lives in **the center of nowhere**. You can't get there by train.

---



## Aa 17.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Carla's school is just a stone's throw away from the bus stop.



What we've saved is just a drop in the ocean compared to what we need.



You don't need to drive to the store. It's just around the corner.



The forest stretched as far as the eye can see.



The Olympic swimming team has won tons of medals.

## Aa 17.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

slowly and in small numbers

=

*in dribs and drabs*

1 a place that is difficult to get to

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 long distances away

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 a huge number of

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 small in number; scarce

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 easy to walk to from

=

\_\_\_\_\_

6 by a very small amount or distance

=

\_\_\_\_\_

7 almost all our belongings

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 18 Beginning and ending

## 18.1 BEGINNING

Mike's **made a fresh start** this year.  
He's eating much more healthily.

*started to live life in  
a much better way*



The sales team has **hit the ground running** since we launched  
our new smartphone.

*done something with lots of  
enthusiasm right from the start*



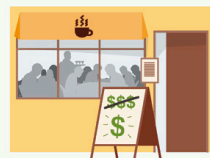
The New Year's celebrations  
**kicked off** with a band  
playing rock music.

*began*



Sophie's café finally **got off  
the ground** when she  
lowered her prices.

*started to become successful*



Tim's **turned over a new leaf**. He used  
to watch TV in the evenings, but  
now he goes jogging.

*started to behave in a better way*



The soccer team made **a promising  
start** to the season, beating  
last year's winners.

*a beginning that shows  
lots of potential*



The pottery course was  
far too difficult for **a newbie**  
like me.

*someone starting an activity or a job  
for the first time*



Mia's fashion firm **got off to a  
flying start**. She has already  
won three awards.

*began extremely well*



Let's **get the ball rolling!**  
Here's a brush and some  
paint for you.

*start doing something  
with enthusiasm*



I need to **get going** on  
the dinner. The guests are  
arriving in an hour!

*start doing something immediately*



## 18.2 ENDING

After selling the last sandwich,  
Dean decided to **call it a day**.

*stop working*



My cake's going to be great.  
I'm just **putting the finishing touches on it**. (US)

*adding the final details to it*



As the day **drew to a close**, we collected  
our things and left the beach.

*came closer to its end*



Trains across the city **ground to a halt**  
because of the snow.

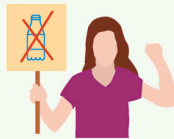
*slowed down and stopped*



## 18.3 EXPRESSIONS WITH "END"

Jen is campaigning to **put an end to**  
the sale of plastic bottles.

*make something end or  
stop happening*



It was **the end of an era** when  
our boss retired after 30 years.

*an important event that marks  
the end of a period of time*



My vacation in Bali was so  
relaxing, but **all good things  
must come to an end**.

*nothing lasts forever*



A tasty pizza after a day of  
sightseeing provided **the  
perfect end to a perfect day**.

*the ideal way to finish a good day*



I've been marking tests all day,  
but **the end is in sight!**

*it will be over soon*



Winning the best actor award was  
**a fitting end** to Goro's career.

*an appropriate way to end something*



## 18.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Let's get the ball **rolling** / ~~running~~ / ~~falling~~! Here's a brush and some paint for you.

1



My cake's going to be great. I'm just putting the **ending** / **closing** / **finishing** touches on it.

2



The pottery course was far too difficult for a **startie** / **newbie** / **newie** like me.

3



Mike's made a **fresh** / **clean** / **cool** start this year. He's eating much more healthily.

4



I've been marking tests all day, but the end is in **view** / **reach** / **sight**!



## 18.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT A BEGINNING OR AN ENDING



beginning ☐ ending ☒



1 beginning ☐ ending ☐



2 beginning ☐ ending ☐



3 beginning ☐ ending ☐



4 beginning ☐ ending ☐



5 beginning ☐ ending ☐

## Aa 18.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

perfect the day a perfect end to

A tasty pizza after a day of sightseeing provided the perfect end to a perfect day.

off flying a to start got

1 Mia's fashion firm \_\_\_\_\_. She has already won three awards.

end the era an of

2 It was \_\_\_\_\_ when our boss retired after 30 years.

day it call a

3 After selling the last sandwich, Dean decided to \_\_\_\_\_.

off ground the got

4 Sophie's café finally \_\_\_\_\_ when she lowered her prices.

halt a ground to

5 Trains across the city \_\_\_\_\_ because of the snow.

## Aa 18.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

slowed down and stopped

= g r o u n d t o a h a l t

1 an appropriate way to end something

= a f \_\_\_\_\_ e

2 stop working

= c \_\_\_\_\_ i \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_

3 began

= k \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_

4 start doing something immediately

= g \_\_\_\_\_ g \_\_\_\_\_

5 came closer to its end

= d \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_



# 19 Chance, luck, and probability

## 19.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "CHANCE"

I think you'll need to replace your washing machine, but I'll take a look **on the off-chance** that I can fix it.

*in the unlikely event*



There was only **a slim chance** that we'd see a cheetah, so we were amazed when we spotted one.

*a small possibility*



The weather forecaster announced that we're **in for a chance of** rain tomorrow.

*fairly likely to experience*



We **don't stand a chance** of getting into the museum before lunchtime.

*have no chance*



## 19.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "LUCK"

Winning the lottery was **a stroke of luck** for us.

*something good that happens by chance*



It was just a case of **beginner's luck** when I won that card game. I'd never played it before.

*good luck for someone who has begun a new activity*



I've already bought you ice cream. **Don't push your luck!**

*Don't ask for anything else.*



You're **in luck!** We have one dress left in your size.

*lucky or able to do something*



I'm afraid you're **out of luck**. The last train has just left the station.

*unlucky or unable to do something*



I hadn't studied for my tests, so it was **sheer luck** when I passed them.

*very good luck that has nothing to do with planning or effort*





### 19.3 PROBABILITY

Buster is **the hot favourite** to win the dog show. (UK)

*the most likely to win*



It looks like a medal is **in the cards** for Noriko after that amazing throw. (US)

*a strong possibility*



The result of the experiment is **a foregone conclusion**.

*almost certain*



Isabella says she will pass her English test, but **don't hold your breath**!

*it is unlikely*



Kerry will only clean up her room **when pigs fly**! (US)

*never; it is very unlikely*



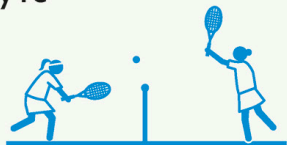
I think Ruben's dreams of becoming a pop star are totally **pie in the sky**.

*unrealistic or unlikely to happen*



It's **anyone's guess** which player will win the game. They're both superb.

*impossible to predict*



I had an interview for a great job, but **blew it** when I arrived half an hour late.

*made something good much less likely to happen*



**Against all odds**, Ryder completed his round-the-world sailing trip today.

*despite circumstances that made it unlikely*



Russell has injured his knee. It's **touch-and-go** whether he'll be able to play in the tournament this month.

*very uncertain*



## Aa 19.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

I've already bought you ice cream.  
Don't push your luck!

**You're lucky.** ☐

**You're unlucky.** ☐

**Don't ask for anything else.** ☒

- 1 The weather forecaster announced that we're in for a chance of rain tomorrow.

**Rain is very likely.** ☐

**Rain is fairly likely.** ☐

**Rain is very unlikely.** ☐

- 2 Buster is the hot favourite to win the dog show.

**Buster is likely to win.** ☐

**Buster is unlikely to win.** ☐

**Buster is too hot.** ☐

- 3 Kerry will only clean up her room when pigs fly!

**It is very likely.** ☐

**It might happen.** ☐

**It is very unlikely.** ☐

- 4 Isabella says she will pass her English test, but don't hold your breath!

**She will definitely pass.** ☐

**She is unlikely to pass.** ☐

**She has already failed.** ☐

- 5 The result of the experiment is a foregone conclusion.

**We already know it.** ☐

**We can't predict it.** ☐

**It is almost certain.** ☐

## Aa 19.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



It looks like a medal is in the cards for Noriko after that amazing throw.



The weather forecaster announced that we're in for a chance of rain tomorrow.



We don't stand a chance of getting into the museum before lunchtime.



I think Ruben's dreams of becoming a pop star are totally pie in the sky.



You're in luck! We have one dress left in your size.



I'm afraid you're out of luck. The last train has just left the station.



## 19.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



It's anyone's guess which player will win the game. They're both superb.



3 Russell has injured his knee. It's \_\_\_\_\_ whether he'll be able to play in the tournament this month.



1 It was just a case of \_\_\_\_\_ when I won that card game. I'd never played it before.



4 I hadn't studied for my tests, so it was \_\_\_\_\_ when I passed them.



2 There was only \_\_\_\_\_ that we'd see a cheetah, so we were amazed when we spotted one.



5 I had an interview for a great job, but \_\_\_\_\_ when I arrived half an hour late.

## Aa

## 19.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

made something good much less likely to happen

=

blew it

1 in the unlikely event

=

2 despite circumstances that made it unlikely

=

3 something good that happens by chance

=

4 Don't ask for anything else.

=

5 the most likely to win

=

# 20 Ease and difficulty

## 20.1 EASE

The test was **a cinch**. I finished it 20 minutes early.

*extremely easy*



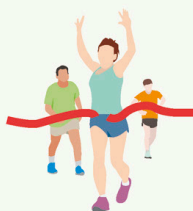
Getting around my city is **a breeze**. Our trains are excellent.

*easy*



Winning that race was **like shooting fish in a barrel**. Nobody else had trained.

*very easy (usually about overcoming competition)*



It's **all too easy** to forget to turn off the lights when you go out.

*very easy (usually about a mistake)*



Making a great cup of coffee is **not rocket science**.

*not very complicated or difficult*



Finding Angela's house was **easy peasy**. I have a GPS.

*easy*



I already play the violin, so learning the cello was **a walk in the park**.

*easy*



Unclogging my sink was **a piece of cake** for Carlita. She's a plumber.

*extremely easy and straightforward*



Alicia's worked in this factory so long she could do her job **with her eyes shut**.

*easily, or without thinking*



Driving on the left was difficult at first, but soon it was **smooth sailing**. (US)

*easy, without major problems*



## 20.2 DIFFICULTIES AND PROBLEMS

Doing the dishes after a dinner party is **a pain in the neck**.

*very annoying or problematic*



My home improvements **opened a can of worms**. The builders discovered so many problems.

*caused a situation that leads to more difficulties*



Don't **make a mountain out of a molehill**. I only asked you to help me bake a cake!

*make a small task or problem seem bigger than it is*



The team has **a mountain to climb** if it wants to win the game.

*a huge amount to do, or problem to overcome*



Giving up chocolate is **easier said than done**.

*not as easy as it seems*



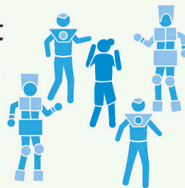
Finishing the building this month is going to be **a tall order**.

*very difficult*



I was **like a fish out of water** at the science fiction convention.

*in a difficult or unusual situation*



There have been **teething problems** with the new computer system at work. (UK)

*problems at the beginning of a process*



Bashir was totally **out of his depth** on his first day working at the florist.

*in a situation that is too difficult*



I tried to make the politician answer my question, but it was **like getting blood from a stone**. (UK)






*extremely difficult, usually because of someone's behavior*







### 20.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  The test was a cinch. I finished it 20 minutes early. ☐
- B  It's all too easy to forget to turn off the lights when you go out. ☐
- C  Alicia's worked in this factory so long she could do her job with her eyes shut. ☐
- D  Making a great cup of coffee is not rocket science. ☐ 1
- E  Finding Angela's house was easy peasy. I have a GPS. ☐

Aa

### 20.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

- I already play the violin, so learning the cello was a walk in the street. ☐
- I already play the violin, so learning the cello was a walk in the park. ☒
- 1 There have been teething problems with the new computer system at work. ☐
- There have been toothing problems with the new computer system at work. ☐
- 2 Unclogging my sink was a slice of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber. ☐
- Unclogging my sink was a piece of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber. ☐
- 3 Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the head. ☐
- Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the neck. ☐
- 4 Getting around my city is a wind. Our trains are excellent. ☐
- Getting around my city is a breeze. Our trains are excellent. ☐
- 5 Finishing the building this month is going to be a tall order. ☐
- Finishing the building this month is going to be a high order. ☐



Aa

## 20.5 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

## EASE

*smooth sailing*

## DIFFICULTY

easier said than done

~~smooth sailing~~

like shooting fish in a barrel

out of his depth

a breeze

a tall order

with her eyes shut

like getting blood from a stone

Aa

## 20.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Bashir was totally out of his depth  
on his first day working at the florist.



3 The team has \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ if it wants to win the game.



1 Don't \_\_\_\_\_ .  
I only asked you to help me bake a cake!



4 I was \_\_\_\_\_  
at the science fiction convention.



2 My home improvements \_\_\_\_\_ .  
The builders discovered so many problems.



5 Doing the dishes after a dinner party is \_\_\_\_\_ .

# 21 Safety and danger

## 21.1 SAFETY

It might rain later. I'll **play it safe** and take an umbrella.

*avoid any unnecessary risks*



The rescue team found the climbers **safe and sound** after a week-long search.

*unharméd and safe*



Make sure you wear a helmet when you're cycling! Remember, **safety first!**

*safety is the most important thing*



Zahira is an excellent scuba teacher. You're **in safe hands** with her.

*in the care of someone responsible*



## 21.2 RISK AND DANGER

The route through the jungle was **fraught with danger**.

*full of danger*



That bike almost hit me! It was **too close for comfort**.

*dangerously close*



Elsa's job at the café is **hanging by a thread** after she dropped another tray of drinks.

*in a very dangerous or insecure situation*



You're **skating on thin ice**, Dai. You've arrived late for school every day this week.

*potentially getting into trouble*



If you don't do your violin practice, you **run the risk** of failing your test next week.

*put yourself at risk*



Blake is **teetering on the brink** of losing his job. His boss has given him a final warning.

*close to a dangerous situation*



The bear had left, and **the coast was clear**. We could continue with our trek.

*it was safe to do something*



After the crash, I called my mom to tell her I was still **in one piece**.

*unharmful or uninjured*



Are you sure you want to buy that motorcycle? I think you should **look before you leap**.

*think about the consequences of taking risks*



I always wear goggles when I do an experiment. **Better safe than sorry!**

*Be careful so that you avoid problems later.*



You have to **take your life in your hands** every time you cross this road.

*take a great risk*



I advised Kathy not to go into the water. It would be **risking life and limb**.

*extremely dangerous*



Hayley had **a close shave**. That ball almost hit her!

*a situation where something bad nearly happened*



Marco **had a narrow escape**, but managed to avoid being hit by the truck.

*nearly had an accident, or got into danger*



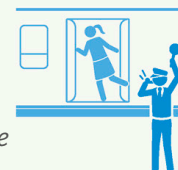
Jill's operation went well, but she's **not out of the woods** yet.

*not out of danger*



Maddy caught the train **by the skin of her teeth**. It left a few seconds later.

*by the smallest possible amount of time*



## 21.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

After the crash, I called my mom to tell her I was still **in one bit**.

*After the crash, I called my mom to tell her I was still in one piece.*



- 1 Zahira is an excellent scuba teacher. You're **in safe arms** with her.



- 2 Hayley had **a near shave**. That ball almost hit her!



- 3 I advised Kathy not to go into the water. It would be **risking life and leg**.



- 4 The bear had left, and **the ocean was clear**. We could continue with our trek.



## 21.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT SAFETY OR DANGER



safety ☐  
danger ☒



1 safety ☐  
danger ☐



2 safety ☐  
danger ☐



3 safety ☐  
danger ☐



4 safety ☐  
danger ☐



5 safety ☐  
danger ☐



6 safety ☐  
danger ☐



7 safety ☐  
danger ☐



8 safety ☐  
danger ☐



9 safety ☐  
danger ☐

Aa

## 21.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The rescue team found the climbers safe and sound after a week-long search.

1



Elsa's job at the café is hanging by a thread after she dropped another tray of drinks.

2



You have to take your life in your hands every time you cross this road.

3



Maddy caught the train by the skin of her teeth. It left a few seconds later.

4



The route through the jungle was fraught with danger.

5



Make sure you wear a helmet when you're cycling! Remember, safety first!

Aa

## 21.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

think about the consequences of taking risks

=

*look before you leap*

1 unharmed or uninjured

=

2 nearly had an accident, or got into danger

=

3 safety is the most important thing

=

4 in the care of someone responsible

=

5 dangerously close

=



# 22 Difficult situations

## 22.1 PROBLEMS AND DIFFICULTIES

Oh, no, I've missed the last bus home.  
I'm really **in a jam** now.

*in a difficult situation*



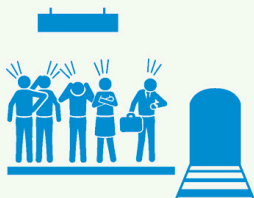
Logan's restaurant is **in dire straits**.  
There are never any customers.

*in a very bad situation*



Getting to work today  
was **a nightmare**. All the  
trains were canceled.

*very difficult or unpleasant*



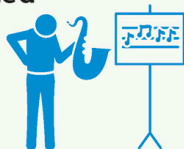
The police officer **came up against a brick wall** when he asked if there were any  
witnesses to the crime.

*couldn't make any progress*



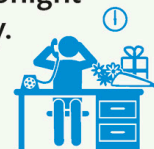
Not being able to read music was  
**a stumbling block** when I started  
learning the saxophone.

*something that causes problems  
and stops progress*



I'm **in a bit of a tight spot** because my boss  
has just asked me to work late tonight  
and it's my wedding anniversary.

*in a difficult or awkward situation*



I hated working at the diner. **The final straw** was when they made  
me dress as a chicken.

*the last in a series of events that makes  
a bad situation impossible to tolerate*



The peeling wallpaper was just **the tip of the iceberg**. The house  
needed so many repairs.

*a small, visible part of  
a larger problem*



Rosa was **thrown in at the deep end** when  
she had to teach the worst class in the  
school on her first day at work.

*put in a difficult situation  
with no time to prepare*



Tina was in **a no-win situation**. Her son  
wanted a beach vacation, but her daughter  
wanted to go skiing.

*a difficult situation with no  
possibility of a positive outcome*



Lisa has had **a bumpy ride** recently.  
First she broke her arm, and now  
she has failed her tests.

*a difficult time*



When Ava told me how much fun she'd  
had at the party, it **rubbed salt  
into the wound**. I wasn't invited.

*made a bad situation feel worse*



I have been offered a more interesting job,  
but the pay is terrible. I'm **caught between  
a rock and a hard place**.

*facing a choice between  
two bad options*



If you let your children eat whatever they  
want for dinner, you're **making a rod  
for your own back**. (UK)

*causing yourself more  
difficulties in the future*



The protesters want to stop the building  
being demolished, but they're  
**fighting a losing battle**.

*trying to achieve something  
that is very unlikely*



## 22.2 DEALING WITH PROBLEMS

I hate going to the dentist, but I know  
I have to **grin and bear it**.

*accept a bad situation  
without complaining*



Getting the old gramophone record  
player to work was **a tough nut  
to crack**.

*a difficult problem to solve*



The plumber **got to the bottom of**  
what's causing the leak. We need  
to replace the pipe.

*found out what is causing  
a problem or situation*



I can't believe you've upset your  
sister again! I'm the one who  
has to **pick up the pieces**.

*try to make a situation better after  
something bad has happened*



Working on the farm meant  
I had to **come to grips with**  
driving a tractor. (US)

*learn how to do  
something challenging*



Aa

## 22.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |                 |                |
|---|-----------------|----------------|
|   | came up against | losing battle  |
| 1 | a tough nut     | bear it        |
| 2 | fighting a      | a brick wall   |
| 3 | rubbed salt     | to crack       |
| 4 | grin and        | the pieces     |
| 5 | thrown in at    | into the wound |
| 6 | pick up         | the deep end   |



## 22.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- A in dire straits ☐
- B a stumbling block ☒
- C the final straw ☐
- D caught between a rock and a hard place ☐
- E making a rod for your own back ☐
- F a bumpy ride ☐
- G a no-win situation ☐
- H grin and bear it ☐
- I in a bit of a tight spot ☐

Aa

## 22.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to ~~smile~~ / grin / ~~laugh~~ and bear it.



1 Oh, no, I've missed the last bus home. I'm really in a ~~jam~~ / trap / ~~hole~~ now.



2 Working on the farm meant I had to come to ~~hands~~ / holds / ~~grips~~ with driving a tractor.



3 The peeling wallpaper was just the ~~tip~~ / top / ~~end~~ of the iceberg. The house needed so many repairs.



4 I hated working at the diner. The final ~~line~~ / straw / ~~rope~~ was when they made me dress as a chicken.



5 The plumber got to the ~~base~~ / depth / ~~bottom~~ of what's causing the leak. We need to replace the pipe.

## 22.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL



Logan's restaurant is in dire straits. There are never any customers.



1 Not being able to read music was \_\_\_\_\_ when I started learning the saxophone.



2 The protesters want to stop the building being demolished, but they're \_\_\_\_\_.



3 If you let your children eat whatever they want for dinner, you're \_\_\_\_\_.



4 I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to \_\_\_\_\_.



5 I can't believe you've upset your sister again! I'm the one who has to \_\_\_\_\_.

fighting a losing battle

~~in dire straits~~

pick up the pieces

a stumbling block

making a rod for your own back

grin and bear it

## 22.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

learn how to do something challenging = c o m e t o g r i p s w i t h

1 very difficult or unpleasant

= a n \_\_\_\_\_

2 a difficult time

= a b \_\_\_\_\_ r \_\_\_\_\_

3 in a very bad situation

= i d \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_

4 a difficult problem to solve

= a t \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ c \_\_\_\_\_

5 in a difficult situation

= i a j \_\_\_\_\_

# 23 The weather and nature

## 23.1 DESCRIBING THE WEATHER

Nina always takes her dog for a walk **come rain or shine**.

*whatever the weather*



Are you sure you want to go for a walk? There's **a howling wind** out there! (US)

*a very strong wind*



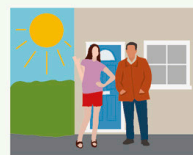
It's **raining cats and dogs**. I wish I hadn't forgotten my umbrella.

*raining heavily*



You don't need a coat, Phil! It's **like an oven** outside.

*extremely hot*



We had to leave the beach because it started **bucketing down**. (UK)

*raining heavily*



What **a scorcher**! It's perfect weather for a barbecue.

*a very hot and sunny day*



## 23.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT NATURE

There are lots of cafés and restaurants in **my neck of the woods**.

*my local area*



After months of boring lessons, our new teacher was **a breath of fresh air**.

*an exciting change for the better*



Don't be such **a stick-in-the-mud**! If you try skydiving, you might enjoy it.

*someone who is unwilling to try new things*



This politician used to be really popular, but now **the tide has turned**.

*circumstances or people's opinions are the opposite of what they used to be*





## 23.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE WEATHER

I love looking after my niece.  
She's **a ray of sunshine**.

*a cheerful person who makes you feel happy*



I had five minutes' peace before my students arrived. It was **the calm before the storm**.

*the quiet period before a time of trouble or excitement*



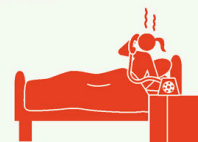
Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just **a storm in a teacup**.

*an argument or controversy about something unimportant*



Sorry, but we'll have to **take a rain check** on meeting up tonight. I'm not feeling very well.

*postpone or cancel*



You weren't listening to me, were you?  
You **had your head in the clouds**.

*were thinking about something else*



Megan **stole my thunder** when she told the professor the result of my experiment.

*stole my idea, or diverted attention away from me*



I wish my boss would stop **beating around the bush** and tell me what he really thinks of my product idea.

*avoiding a subject by talking about irrelevant things*



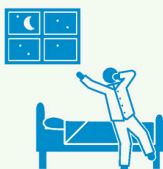
Kieran is so involved in every detail of this project that he **can't see the forest for the trees**. (US)

*is looking too closely at the small details to see a whole situation clearly*



I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to **hit the hay**. (US)

*go to bed*



The decision to close the library **made waves** in my local area.

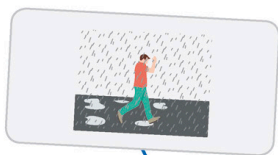
*caused controversy*





Aa

## 23.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



1



2



3



We had to leave the beach because it started bucketing down.

It's raining cats and dogs. I wish I hadn't forgotten my umbrella.

Nina always takes her dog for a walk come rain or shine.

What a scorcher! It's perfect weather for a barbecue.

Aa

## 23.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I love looking after my niece. She's a ray of sunshine.



I love looking after my niece. She's a beam of sunshine.



- 1 You weren't listening to me, were you? You had your head in the air.  
You weren't listening to me, were you? You had your head in the clouds.



- 2 This politician used to be really popular, but now the tide has turned.  
This politician used to be really popular, but now the ocean has turned.



- 3 Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just a cloud in a teacup.  
Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just a storm in a teacup.



- 4 You don't need a coat, Phil! It's like a fire outside.  
You don't need a coat, Phil! It's like an oven outside.



- 5 I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to hit the hay.  
I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to hit the grass.



- 6 There are lots of cafés and restaurants in my neck of the woods.  
There are lots of cafés and restaurants in my neck of the trees.



Aa

## 23.6 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

go to bed

hit the hay

① someone who is unwilling to try new things

② a cheerful person who makes you feel happy

③ postpone or cancel

④ an exciting change for the better

⑤ a very strong wind

⑥ extremely hot

⑦ raining heavily

a ray of sunshine

raining cats and dogs

a breath of fresh air

like an oven

~~hit the hay~~

a howling wind

take a rain check on

a stick-in-the-mud



## 23.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☐D ☒ 1E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐

# 24 Talking

## 24.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "TALK"

Ahmed **talks the talk**, but isn't very hardworking.

*talks in a convincing way*



I've tried telling Maya to clean up her room, but it's **like talking to a brick wall**.

*pointless because the other person won't respond*



Ryan wants to join the circus. I'm trying to **talk some sense into him**.

*persuade him to behave in a sensible way*



Kirsty's always commenting on other people's clothes. **She can talk!**

*She's just as bad herself!*



My colleagues love to **talk shop** when they meet for lunch.

*talk about their jobs*



Linda likes to **talk big**. She claims she's visited every country.

*boast or exaggerate*



Leo can **talk himself out of any awkward situation**.

*escape from any difficult situation using lies or humor*



Tamara is really friendly, but she can **talk your ear off**.

*talk at great length*



I hate it when my boss **talks down to me!**

*patronizes me*



I made **small talk** with Marisha while we waited for the train.

*polite conversation about unimportant or uncontroversial things*



## 24.2 CONVERSATION AND TALKING

I always enjoy **a chitchat** with my sister over coffee. (US)

*a chat or gossip*



This politician has a reputation for **speaking his mind**.

*saying exactly what he thinks about something*



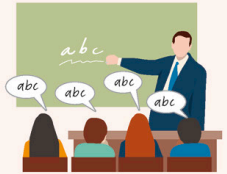
My grandpa **spins a good yarn**. He loves telling us about his childhood adventures.

*tells funny or unlikely stories*



The students **parroted** the facts without using their own words.

*repeated word for word*



Akio **struck up a conversation** with one of his fellow passengers.

*began a conversation*



I sat on the shore with my boyfriend, **shooting the breeze**. (US)

*talking in a relaxed way*



Nina keeps **droning on** about her new car. It's getting really boring!

*talking at length in an uninteresting way*



Sarah was born with **the gift of the gab**. She could sell you anything.

*the ability to speak confidently and persuasively*



My cousin is such **a loudmouth**. He never stops talking!

*someone who talks too much*



**Cat got your tongue?** You usually have so much to say.

*You're being very quiet.*



Aa

### 24.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
|   | Akio struck up a conversation                 | without using their own words.         |
| 1 | I always enjoy a chitchat                     | talks down to me!                      |
| 2 | The students parroted the facts               | with one of his fellow passengers.     |
| 3 | Ahmed talks the talk,                         | with my sister over coffee.            |
| 4 | I hate it when my boss                        | but isn't very hardworking.            |
| 5 | Leo can talk himself out                      | for speaking his mind.                 |
| 6 | My colleagues love to talk shop               | but it's like talking to a brick wall. |
| 7 | This politician has a reputation              | of any awkward situation.              |
| 8 | I made small talk with Marisha                | when they meet for lunch.              |
| 9 | I've tried telling Maya to clean up her room, | while we waited for the train.         |

Aa

### 24.4 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a chat or gossip                  | = a c h i t c h a t         |
| 1 talk about their jobs           | = t _ _ _ s _ _ _           |
| 2 tells funny or unlikely stories | = s _ _ _ a g _ _ _ y _ _ _ |
| 3 She's just as bad herself!      | = S _ _ c _ _ t _ _ _ !     |
| 4 boast or exaggerate             | = t _ _ _ b _ _ _           |
| 5 repeated word for word          | = p _ _ _ _ _ _ _           |
| 6 patronizes me                   | = t _ _ _ d _ _ _ t _ m _   |
| 7 talks in a convincing way       | = t _ _ _ t _ _ t _ _ _     |





## 24.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

struck up a conversation ☐

speaking his mind ☐

shooting the breeze ☒

1 talk some sense into him ☐

talks down to me ☐

She can talk! ☐

2 speaking his mind ☐

spins a good yarn ☐

talk your ear off ☐

3 the gift of the gab ☐

drone on ☐

a loudmouth ☐

4 talks down to me ☐

talks the talk ☐

small talk ☐

## Aa

## 24.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL



Ryan wants to join the circus. I'm trying to talk some sense into him.



3 Sarah was born with \_\_\_\_\_. She could sell you anything.



1 Nina keeps \_\_\_\_\_ about her new car. It's getting really boring!



4 \_\_\_\_\_ You usually have so much to say.



2 This politician has a reputation for \_\_\_\_\_.



5 I sat on the shore with my boyfriend, \_\_\_\_\_.

speaking his mind

Cat got your tongue?

~~talk some sense into him~~

shooting the breeze

drone on

the gift of the gab

# 25 Sharing information

## 25.1 SHARING NEWS

Good luck with your interview today.  
**Keep me posted** about how it goes!

*keep me informed with  
the latest news*



Anna's manager **touched base** with her for  
a quick update on her research.

*had a brief conversation to  
get an update*



This restaurant couldn't afford an  
advertising campaign, but it has become  
really popular **by word of mouth**.

*by people talking about it*



Rumors that the two actors had secretly  
gotten married **spread like wildfire**.

*spread very quickly*



Angie **filled me in** on what happened  
at work while I was away.

*told me all the latest  
important information*



We must have **got our wires crossed**.  
I thought the dress code for this  
party was casual.

*misunderstood information,  
or become confused*



## 25.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

Pedro's going to marry Elena. I  
**heard it from the horse's mouth**.

*heard the news directly from  
the original source*



**A little bird told me** that Richa  
is going to be promoted.

*someone (whose name  
I won't reveal) told me*



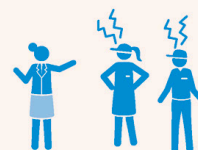
I'm planning a surprise trip to Paris with  
Liam to celebrate our wedding anniversary.  
Don't **let the cat out of the bag**!

*reveal a secret by mistake*



The boss **stirred up a hornet's nest**  
when she said we would  
have to take a pay cut. (US)

*caused a lot of upset or excitement*



I'm afraid your cat will have to stay here overnight, but I promise I'll **keep you in the picture** about how she's recovering.

*keep you fully informed*



The tour rep **broke the news** to us that our flight had been canceled.

*revealed important (and usually bad) news*



I'm sorry to be **the bearer of bad news**, but we won't be able to fix your computer.

*someone who delivers bad news*



Lin decided to **get it off her chest** and told Mel all about her relationship problems.

*share something worrying or upsetting*



The design team make sure they always **keep me in the loop**.

*keep me updated about shared information*



Phil showed me around the kitchen. He knows **the nuts and bolts** of running a restaurant.

*the practical rules of something*



## 25.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

When news stories are shocking, I always **take them with a grain of salt**. (US)

*don't completely believe them*



After leaving the band, Marco **dished the dirt** about the other band members to a journalist.

*shared malicious gossip*



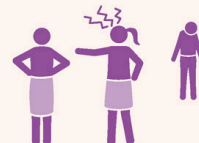
I **heard it through the grapevine** that Luisa is pregnant.

*heard some news through gossip or rumor*



Why did you **spill the beans** and tell Luke I had a new boyfriend? I wanted to tell him myself.

*reveal a secret*





## 25.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A Good luck with your interview today. Keep me posted about how it goes! ☐
- B The tour rep broke the news to us that our flight had been canceled. ☐
- C Phil showed me around the kitchen. He knows the nuts and bolts of running a restaurant. ☒ 1
- D Pedro's going to marry Elena. I heard it from the horse's mouth. ☐
- E A little bird told me that Richa is going to be promoted. ☐
- F Angie filled me in on what happened at work while I was away. ☐
- G The design team make sure they always keep me in the loop. ☐
- H Lin decided to get it off her chest and told Mel all about her relationship problems. ☐

## Aa

## 25.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm sorry to be **the giver of bad news**, but we won't be able to fix your computer.

I'm sorry to be the bearer of bad news, but we won't be able to fix your computer.



- 1 We must have **got our lines crossed**. I thought the dress code for this party was casual.



- 2 When news stories are shocking, I always **take them with a grain of sugar**.



- 3 The boss **stirred up a bee's nest** when she said we would have to take a pay cut.



- 4 After leaving the band, Marco **served the dirt** about the other band members to a journalist.



- 5 Anna's manager **touched ground** with her for a quick update on her research.



- 6 The tour rep **smashed the news** to us that our flight had been canceled.



Aa

## 25.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



This restaurant couldn't afford an advertising campaign, but it has become really popular by word of mouth.

1



Lin decided to get it off her chest and told Mel all about her relationship problems.

2



I'm afraid your cat will have to stay here overnight, but I promise I'll keep you in the picture about how she's recovering.

3



Why did you spill the beans and tell Luke I had a new boyfriend? I wanted to tell him myself.

4



Rumors that the two actors had secretly gotten married spread like wildfire.

5



I'm planning a surprise trip to Paris with Liam to celebrate our wedding anniversary. Don't let the cat out of the bag!

Aa

## 25.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

keep me updated about shared information

=

*keep me in the loop*

1 someone who delivers bad news

=

2 don't completely believe them

=

3 misunderstood information, or become confused

=

4 heard some news through gossip or rumor

=

5 had a brief conversation to get an update

=



# 26 Truth and lies

## 26.1 TELLING THE TRUTH

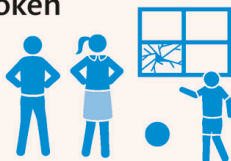
I'm scared of dogs. In fact, I'm terrified of them, **to tell you the truth**.

*to be completely honest*



Nathan **came clean** with his parents and told them he had broken the window.

*confessed to doing something wrong*



My teacher was **brutally honest** with me and told me my essay was terrible.

*honest in a very direct or insensitive way*



The voting process in this election is completely **above board**. All the votes are counted and checked.

*honest, open, or legal*



A **whistleblower** has told the authorities about the dirty conditions in the kitchen at work.

*someone who tells a person in authority about something illegal or wrong*



## 26.2 KEEPING SECRETS

Tania told me a secret but asked me to **keep it under my hat**.

*avoid telling anyone*



Anita's recipe for her banana cake is **top secret**. She won't share it with anyone.

*completely secret*



I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. **My lips are sealed**.

*I will keep it a secret.*



I'm not going to tell you how much my house cost. It's **none of your business**!

*private information*



We're keeping our new car model **under wraps** until the launch later this week.

*secret*



## 26.3 TELLING LIES

I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her **a white lie** and said I loved it.

*a lie to avoid hurting someone's feelings*



I think Warren was **bending the truth** when I interviewed him for this job. He said he had excellent IT skills.

*lying, misleading people, or exaggerating*



My wife was angry when I **went behind her back** and bought myself a new motorcycle.

*did something without telling her*



David **lied through his teeth** to his mom. He claimed the cat had broken her favorite vase.

*told a blatant lie*



The salesman really **took us for a ride** when he sold us this car. It's always breaking down!

*deceived or cheated us*



Our boss says the company is doing well, but she has a reputation for **telling half-truths**.

*not telling the whole truth*



## 26.4 SUSPICION

I **have a sneaking suspicion** that Marcia was at a job interview this morning.

*suspect something without firm evidence*



I knew Frida hadn't been out sick. I **smelled a rat** when she came back to work with a suntan.

*suspected that someone had lied*



The children are being very quiet. I think there's **something fishy** going on!

*something suspicious*



The piano teacher **had a hunch** that Jordan hadn't done any practice since his last lesson.

*suspected*



## 26.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Anita's recipe for her banana cake is high secret. She won't share it with anyone.

☐

Anita's recipe for her banana cake is top secret. She won't share it with anyone.

☒

1



The children are being very quiet. I think there's something fishy going on!

☐

The children are being very quiet. I think there's something tricky going on!

☐

2



Tania told me a secret but asked me to keep it under my coat.

☐

Tania told me a secret but asked me to keep it under my hat.

☐

3



My wife was angry when I went behind her head and bought myself a new motorcycle.

☐

My wife was angry when I went behind her back and bought myself a new motorcycle.

☐

4



I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. My lips are sealed.

☐

I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. My lips are closed.

☐

5



I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a white lie and said I loved it.

☐

I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a pink lie and said I loved it.

☐

## 26.6 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

## TRUTH

*a whistleblower*

## LIES

bending the truth

~~a whistleblower~~

telling half-truths

came clean

above board

went behind her back

took us for a ride

brutally honest



## 26.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- A** lied through his teeth ☒
- B** my lips are sealed ☐
- C** to tell you the truth ☐
- D** had a hunch ☐
- E** under wraps ☐
- F** bending the truth ☐
- G** have a sneaking suspicion ☐

Aa

## 26.8 READ THE LETTER AND CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS

Hi Sunita,  
I have some exciting news for you, but please keep it under / ~~below~~ your hat because it's most / top secret at the moment. I've been promoted! I had a hint / hunch that I would get the job because my interview went well. As I said, please don't tell anyone because my new boss still wants to keep it under wraps / cover.  
Love, Lindsay

Aa

## 26.9 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL



We're keeping our new car model under wraps until the launch later this week.



3 I knew Frida hadn't been out sick. I \_\_\_\_\_ when she came back to work with a suntan.



1 I'm not going to tell you how much my house cost. It's \_\_\_\_\_ !



4 David \_\_\_\_\_ to his mom. He claimed the cat had broken her favorite vase.



2 \_\_\_\_\_ has told the authorities about the dirty conditions in the kitchen at work.



5 My teacher was \_\_\_\_\_ with me and told me my essay was terrible.

smelled a rat

none of your business

brutally honest

A whistleblower

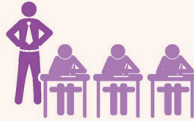
~~under wraps~~

lied through his teeth

## 27.1 LOOKING AND WATCHING

The examiner **watched us like a hawk**, making sure we didn't cheat.

*watched us very carefully*



Felipe **cast a glance** at his watch. The bus was already 10 minutes late.

*looked quickly*



Kezia looked furious when I told her I'd torn her dress. **If looks could kill!**

*Someone looked very angry.*



Bastian **kept a close watch on** his children as they played outside.

*watched carefully*



The teacher **turned a blind eye** to his students' bad behavior.

*ignored, or pretended not to see*



We **kept our eyes peeled**, hoping we'd spot some rare birds.

*watched very carefully for something*



I asked my brother to **keep an eye on** the dinner while I was talking on the phone.

*take care of something, or watch something carefully*



The border guard gave my documents **the once-over**, then let me drive on.

*a quick check or inspection*



I always **cast an eye over** my desk to make sure I haven't forgotten anything when I leave the office.

*look at or check something quickly*



Karen has **an eagle eye**. She found lots of mistakes when I asked her to check my essay.

*the ability to spot small details*





## 27.2 LISTENING AND HEARING

Jenny, please tell me how the interview went. **I'm all ears!**

*I'm eager to hear about it!*



I told my daughter she should work harder, but my advice **fell on deaf ears**.

*was ignored*



My grandfather is **hard of hearing**, so I often have to repeat things to him.

*partially deaf*



Omar **lent a sympathetic ear** when I broke up with my boyfriend.

*listened to someone's problems with sympathy*



Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was **a million miles away**.

*not listening at all*



Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, **walls have ears!**

*you never know who's listening when you're talking in a public place*



I completely **zoned out** during that meeting. It was so boring!

*stopped listening or concentrating*



It was **music to my ears** when my son told me he'd passed his driving test.

*wonderful news*



Ethan was only **listening with half an ear** and kept checking his phone as I spoke to him.

*not listening attentively*



When my parents **got wind** of the fact that I'd had a house party, they were furious.

*found out about something that was meant to be a secret*



## 27.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I told my daughter she should work harder, but my advice fell on ~~closed~~ / ~~blocked~~ / **deaf** ears.

- 1 Felipe **cast** / **threw** / **looked** a glance at his watch. The bus was already 10 minutes late.
- 2 Jenny, please tell me how the interview went. I'm all **eyes** / **ears** / **listening**!
- 3 Bastian **kept** / **held** / **gave** a close watch on his children as they played outside.
- 4 The examiner watched us like a **bear** / **hawk** / **lion**, making sure we didn't cheat.
- 5 Kezia looked furious when I told her I'd torn her dress. If **looks** / **eyes** / **ears** could kill!
- 6 When my parents got **air** / **ear** / **wind** of the fact that I'd had a house party, they were furious.
- 7 Omar lent a **kind** / **sympathetic** / **nice** ear when I broke up with my boyfriend.

27.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO,  
THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES  
IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEMA ☐B ☐ 1C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐I ☐27.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS  
OF THE IDIOMS TO THE  
CORRECT ENDINGS

a million

half an ear

1 If looks

hearing

2 hard of

miles away

3 listening with

could kill!

4 fell on

sympathetic ear

5 cast an

like a hawk

6 watched us

blind eye

7 lent a

eye over

8 turned a

deaf ears



I asked my brother to put an eye on the dinner while I was talking on the phone. ☐

I asked my brother to keep an eye on the dinner while I was talking on the phone. ☒



1 Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, walls have ears! ☐

Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, doors have ears! ☐



2 We kept our eyes peeled, hoping we'd spot some rare birds. ☐

We kept our eyes alert, hoping we'd spot some rare birds. ☐



3 Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was a thousand miles away. ☐

Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was a million miles away. ☐



4 The border guard gave my documents the twice-over, then let me drive on. ☐

The border guard gave my documents the once-over, then let me drive on. ☐



5 The teacher turned a blind eye to his students' bad behavior. ☐

The teacher turned a closed eye to his students' bad behavior. ☐

watched very carefully for something = k e p t o u r e y e s p e e l e d

1 wonderful news = m \_ \_ \_ \_ t \_ m \_ e \_ \_ \_

2 the ability to spot small details = a \_ e \_ \_ \_ \_ e \_ \_ \_

3 look at or check something quickly = c \_ \_ \_ a \_ e \_ \_ o \_ \_ \_

4 was ignored = f \_ \_ \_ o \_ d \_ \_ e \_ \_ \_

5 partially deaf = h \_ \_ \_ o \_ h \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

# 28 Music and the arts

## 28.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT MUSIC AND THE ARTS

How many times must I **drum it into your head**? Wipe your feet on the mat!

*tell you something again and again*



Our new bookstore opens today. Let's **get the show on the road**!

*get something started or working properly*



You've **changed your tune**! I thought you didn't like cats.

*changed your opinion*



Dennis broke his mom's laptop. He had to **face the music** and tell her.

*accept the consequences of actions*



Pavel decided to **jazz up** his house, so he painted it purple.

*make something brighter, more colorful, or more exciting*



Juanita is so careful at work. She **does everything by the book**.

*follows the rules, or does things in the expected way*



Isaac's speech at the wedding **hit the right note**. It was really funny, but no one was offended.

*was appropriate, or the right thing to say*



Making sure people know about our concert will help us **drum up** an audience.

*get by making an effort*



Ramona loves to **toot her own horn**. She's always showing us her trophies. (US)

*talk too much about her achievements*



When Fay told me about her engagement, it was **music to my ears**!

*wonderful news*



Dad's always telling me to clean my room. He **is like a broken record**.

*says the same thing again and again*



Ian's desserts are amazing. He'll be **a tough act to follow** when he leaves.

*difficult to follow with as much success*



The police chief **put us in the picture** about the bank robbery. (UK)

*explained the facts about a situation*



I knew it was Enzo who had eaten my lunch. I can **read him like a book**.

*understand what he's thinking from his body language*



I'm going to **take a page out of your book** and clean my desk. (US)

*copy your good habit*



Antonio is great at flower arranging. He **has it down to an art**.

*is an expert in something, usually after much practice*



Nisha is helping me **fine-tune** my presentation for tomorrow morning.

*change something slightly to make it even better*



Kira's boss **made a scene** when she arrived five minutes late.

*made an unnecessary fuss*



Arjun felt **left out of the picture** when his roommates got a dog without telling him.

*not informed about some news or a situation*



Despite the rain, we decided not to cancel the play in the park. **The show must go on!**

*Something must still happen despite any difficulties.*







## 28.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

music to my ears	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	face the music	<input type="checkbox"/>	made a scene	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 drum up	<input type="checkbox"/>	hit the right note	<input type="checkbox"/>	face the music	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 changed your tune	<input type="checkbox"/>	music to my ears	<input type="checkbox"/>	fine-tune	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 a tough act to follow	<input type="checkbox"/>	jazz up	<input type="checkbox"/>	hit the right note	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 toot her own horn	<input type="checkbox"/>	left out of the picture	<input type="checkbox"/>	The show must go on!	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 changed your tune	<input type="checkbox"/>	fine-tune	<input type="checkbox"/>	music to my ears	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 get the show on the road	<input type="checkbox"/>	has it down to an art	<input type="checkbox"/>	is like a broken record	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 face the music	<input type="checkbox"/>	read him like a book	<input type="checkbox"/>	changed your tune	<input type="checkbox"/>

Aa

## 28.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Pavel decided to **rock up** his house, so he painted it purple.

Pavel decided to jazz up his house, so he painted it purple.



1 Antonio is great at flower arranging. He **has it down to a picture**.



2 Juanita is so careful at work. She **does everything by the story**.



3 I'm going to **take a chapter out of your book** and clean my desk.



4 The police chief **put us in the drawing** about the bank robbery.



5 How many times must I **shake it into your head**? Wipe your feet on the mat!



Aa

## 28.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

was appropriate, or the right thing to say

music to my ears

1 talk too much about her achievements

made a scene

2 wonderful news

hit the right note

3 get by making an effort

toot her own horn

4 made an unnecessary fuss

face the music

5 says the same thing again and again

drum up

6 accept the consequences of actions

is like a broken record

Aa

## 28.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Ramona loves to toot her own horn.  
She's always showing us her trophies.



3 You've \_\_\_\_\_!  
I thought you didn't like cats.



1 Ian's desserts are amazing. He'll be \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ when he leaves.



4 Nisha is helping me \_\_\_\_\_  
my presentation for tomorrow morning.



2 Arjun felt \_\_\_\_\_  
when his roommates got a dog without telling him.



5 Dennis broke his mom's laptop. He had to  
\_\_\_\_\_ and tell her.

# 29 Eating and drinking

## 29.1 EATING

Yuka's complaining that her sons have **eaten her out of house and home**.

*eaten all the food in her house*



You can buy yourself a **square meal** at the student café for a few dollars.

*a satisfying and nutritious meal*



Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a **feast fit for a king**.

*a delicious meal with lots of courses*



Aliyah **whipped up** an omelet for Caleb and his friends.

*prepared a meal quickly*



The sight of the cake in the café window **made my mouth water**.

*made me hungry, or want to eat something*



Ethan took his new client out for a **sit-down meal**. (US)

*a large and tasty meal, usually in a restaurant*



Paolo was so hungry that he **wolfed down** that huge burger really quickly.

*ate quickly and greedily*



Krish always starts his day with a **hearty breakfast**.

*a large breakfast*



## 29.2 DRINKING

I **washed down** my pizza with a glass of lemonade.

*followed a meal with a drink*



Chris bought a **round of drinks** for the basketball team.

*drinks you buy for the group of people you are with*



Blue cheese is **an acquired taste**.  
I still think it's disgusting, but  
Joe loves it.

*something that you only like  
after trying it a few times*



I was in a rush, so I **grabbed**  
**something to eat** from  
the fast food stand.

*bought something  
to eat in a hurry*



Wayne **eats like a bird**. He only ever  
orders a small salad for lunch.

*eats a very small amount*



I'm so glad I ordered an extra-large  
pizza. I **could eat a horse**!

*I feel extremely hungry.*



Nigel took a tray of **pip-ing hot**  
cupcakes out of the oven.

*very hot*



We complained to the waiter that  
our soup was **stone cold**.

*completely cold*



We sat in front of the TV **stuffing**  
**our faces** with popcorn.

*eating lots of food in a greedy way*



You shouldn't eat so many cookies!  
You'll **spoil your appetite**.

*lose your desire to eat later*



After three hours in the gym,  
Dan **quenched his thirst** with  
a glass of juice.

*satisfied his thirst*



I felt **parched** after working  
in the sun, so I drank a  
whole bottle of water.

*extremely thirsty*



Aa

## 29.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



We sat in front of the TV stuffing our faces with popcorn.



Krish always starts his day with a hearty breakfast.



Ethan took his new client out for a sit-down meal.



You shouldn't eat so many cookies! You'll spoil your appetite.



Nigel took a tray of piping hot cupcakes out of the oven.



I washed down my pizza with a glass of lemonade.



Aliyah whipped up an omelet for Caleb and his friends.



We complained to the waiter that our soup was stone cold.



Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a feast fit for a king.



## 29.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR

A ☐B ☐C ☒1 A ☐B ☐C ☐2 A ☐B ☐C ☐3 A ☐B ☐C ☐4 A ☐B ☐C ☐5 A ☐B ☐C ☐



Aa

## 29.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

her

house

of

home

and

eaten

out

Yuka's complaining that her sons have eaten her out of house and home.

fit

king

a

for

feast

a

1 Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with \_\_\_\_\_.

to

something

grabbed

eat

2 I was in a rush, so I \_\_\_\_\_ from the fast food stand.

mouth

my

water

made

3 The sight of the cake in the café window \_\_\_\_\_.

drinks

of

round

a

4 Chris bought \_\_\_\_\_ for the basketball team.

could

a

horse!

I

eat

5 I'm so glad I ordered an extra-large pizza. \_\_\_\_\_

Aa

## 29.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

bought something to eat in a hurry

=

grabbed something to eat

1 a satisfying and nutritious meal

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 eats a very small amount

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 ate quickly and greedily

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 prepared a meal quickly

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 lose your desire to eat later

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 30 Describing your health

## 30.1 SICKNESS AND RECOVERY

Leo was feeling **the worse for wear** after he stayed out all night.

*tired or in a bad state*



My hay fever tends to **flare up** every summer.

*suddenly get worse*



Ayano was feeling **under the weather**, so she left work early.

*not well, slightly sick or ill*



This music's far too loud! It has given me **a splitting headache**.

*a terrible headache*



I don't feel very well. I think I'm **coming down with something**.

*starting to get sick*



Pablo is **on the road to recovery** after breaking his leg.

*getting better*



## 30.2 HEALTH AND FITNESS

Ollie received **a clean bill of health** from his doctor.

*the news that you are completely healthy*



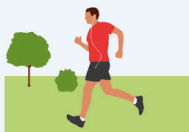
The dancers in this show have to be **as fit as a fiddle**.

*very fit and healthy*



After turning 40, Tom decided to **get in shape** and started jogging.

*become fitter and healthier, usually by losing weight*



Moving to the country has given Kira **a new lease on life**. (US)

*new energy and enthusiasm for life*



I'm not well enough to go to work today, so I'm going to **call in sick**.

*call my employer to say I am too sick to work*



Jeanne has a **heavy cold**, so she's staying at home today.

*a bad cold*



I'm **in bad shape**. I was exhausted after running to catch the bus.

*in poor physical condition*



Yuka fell and cut her leg really badly when she was hiking, but she's **on the mend** now.

*getting better*



Valentina has an upset stomach and can't stop **throwing up**.

*vomiting*



Uma is **up and about** following her operation last week.

*able to walk around*



A week at a health spa was **just what the doctor ordered** after a stressful month at work.

*exactly what was needed*



A relaxing afternoon in the park helped me **recharge my batteries**.

*regain my energy by resting*



After a few days by the coast, Lauren began to feel **as right as rain**.

*fit and healthy*



Imran looks **the picture of health** since he started going to the gym.

*extremely healthy*



## 30.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

road

on

the

recovery

to

Pablo is on the road to recovery after breaking his leg.

down

something

coming

with

1 I don't feel very well. I think I'm \_\_\_\_\_.

lease

life

on

new

a

2 Moving to the country has given Kira \_\_\_\_\_.

of

a

clean

health

bill

3 Ollie received \_\_\_\_\_ from his doctor.

fiddle

fit

as

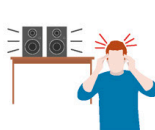
a

as

4 The dancers in this show have to be \_\_\_\_\_.



## 30.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT SICKNESS OR HEALTH

sickness ☐health ☒1 sickness ☐health ☐2 sickness ☐health ☐3 sickness ☐health ☐4 sickness ☐health ☐5 sickness ☐health ☐6 sickness ☐health ☐7 sickness ☐health ☐8 sickness ☐health ☐9 sickness ☐health ☐

## 30.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

After a few days by the coast, Lauren began to feel **as good as rain**.

*After a few days by the coast, Lauren began to feel as right as rain.*



- 1 This music's far too loud! It has given me **a hitting headache**.



- 2 A week at a health spa was **just what the nurse ordered** after a stressful month at work.



- 3 Uma is **up and around** following her operation last week.



- 4 Imran looks **the drawing of health** since he started going to the gym.



- 5 A relaxing afternoon in the park helped me **load my batteries**.



## 30.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

not well, slightly sick or ill

= u n d e r t h e w e a t h e r

- 1 tired or in a bad state

= t       w       f     w      

- 2 vomiting

= t                 u    

- 3 getting better

= o     t     m        

- 4 in poor physical condition

= i     b     s        

- 5 suddenly get worse

= f               u    

- 6 a bad cold

= a   h           c    

- 7 become fitter and healthier

= g       i     s



# 31 Knowledge and education

## 31.1 KNOWLEDGE, THINKING, AND LEARNING

Mary's an expert in ancient history.  
She really **knows her stuff**.

*knows a lot about a subject*



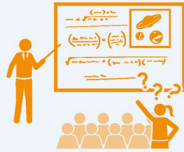
Peter's **brushing up on** his French  
before his vacation in Paris.

*revising or improving knowledge  
about something*



The professor's astrophysics  
lecture **went over my head**.

*was impossible to understand*



Andrea only started work here last  
week. She's still **learning the ropes**.

*learning the basic skills for a job*



I can show you around my city. I **know it  
like the back of my hand**.

*know it extremely well*



Vineetha loves modern art.  
She **knows it inside out**.

*knows it extremely well*



We both thought of buying Dan  
a camera for his birthday. **Great  
minds think alike!**

*Intelligent people have the same  
ideas (said in a humorous way).*



My client wanted a completely  
new design. I had to **put on my  
thinking cap**.

*think seriously or creatively  
about a problem*



I just **can't make heads or tails of  
this map**. (US)

*can't understand at all*



Sumiko gave her speech without notes.  
She had **learned it by heart**.

*memorized it*



## 31.2 SCHOOL, COLLEGE, AND TESTS

Brad thought he would pass the test easily, but he only **scraped by**.

*passed a test with difficulty*



Ian is such a **bookworm**.  
He loves reading.

*someone who enjoys reading books*



When Souad took her piano test, she **passed with flying colors**.

*passed easily, or performed very well*



Ben accused Stefan of being a **copycat**. Their artworks were very similar.

*someone who copies another person's idea*



Trent is a **teacher's pet**. He always offers to carry the teacher's bag.

*someone who seeks approval from a person in authority*



## 31.3 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Dion's new laptop is **light-years ahead of** his old one.

*much more advanced than*



Roman has bought himself a **state-of-the-art** TV set.

*very modern and up-to-date*



These doctors have made a **breakthrough** in their medical research.

*an important discovery or achievement*



Our **cutting-edge** products have made our company millions of dollars.

*extremely modern and innovative*



Ping's design for the new library really **breaks the mold**.

*changes the usual way things are done*



### 31.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Sumiko gave her speech without notes.

1 Brad thought he would pass the test easily,

2 Our cutting-edge products

3 The professor's astrophysics lecture

4 Ian is such a bookworm.

5 Vineetha loves modern art.

6 Ping's design for the new library

7 These doctors have made

went over my head.

have made our company millions of dollars.

She had learned it by heart.

She knows it inside out.

but he only scraped by.

a breakthrough in their medical research.

He loves reading.

really breaks the mold.



### 31.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Peter's brushing up on his French before his vacation in Paris.



1 We both thought of buying Dan a camera for his birthday. \_\_\_\_\_



2 Dion's new laptop is \_\_\_\_\_ his old one.



3 Ben accused Stefan of being \_\_\_\_\_. Their artworks were very similar.



4 Mary's an expert in ancient history. She really \_\_\_\_\_.



5 The professor's astrophysics lecture \_\_\_\_\_.

## 31.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Trent is a teacher's ~~friend~~ / ~~pet~~ / ~~help~~. He always offers to carry the teacher's bag.



1 Andrea only started work here last week. She's still learning the ~~ropes~~ / ~~strings~~ / ~~lines~~.



2 I can show you around my city. I know it like the ~~back~~ / ~~palm~~ / ~~front~~ of my hand.



3 My client wanted a completely new design. I had to put on my thinking ~~hat~~ / ~~cap~~ / ~~head~~.



4 I just can't make heads or ~~feet~~ / ~~bodies~~ / ~~tails~~ of this map.



5 Peter's ~~brushing~~ / ~~sweeping~~ / ~~cleaning~~ up on his French before his vacation in Paris.

## 31.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

was impossible to understand

=

went over my head

1 passed a test with difficulty

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 very modern and up-to-date

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 someone who copies another person's idea

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 someone who enjoys reading books

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 can't understand at all

=

\_\_\_\_\_

6 an important discovery or achievement

=

\_\_\_\_\_

7 passed easily, or performed very well

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 32 Money

## 32.1 IDIOMS ABOUT MONEY

Luisa had to pay a **hefty sum** to get a ticket for the game today.

*a large amount of money*



My uncle started his own business a few years ago, and now he's really **well off**.

*comfortably rich*



Marco had to **tighten his belt**, so he started bringing his own lunch to work.

*spend less money*



Sarah had to **pay through the nose** to get a taxi home after she missed the last train.

*pay a lot of money*



Luna wants to buy a house soon, so she's building up a **nest-egg**.

*a large sum of money saved for a specific purpose*



Donna **struck it rich** when she won the lottery.

*suddenly became rich*



Irena's new handbag was very **pricey**. It cost hundreds of dollars.

*expensive*



Aranza and Dominic decided to **go Dutch** at the end of the meal.

*share the cost of a meal out equally*



The shoes at the market **cost next to nothing**, so Jeremy bought three pairs.

*were very cheap*



If you don't turn off the lights when you leave the house, you're **throwing money down the drain**.

*wasting money*





I found it hard to **make ends meet** when I was a student, so I started working in a café.

*pay for my basic needs*



The popcorn in this movie theater is **a rip-off!** I prefer to bring my own snacks.

*far more expensive than it should be*



I loved looking after Nadia's cat while she was on vacation. It was **easy money**.

*money earned for doing very little work*



It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to **throw money around**.

*show off by spending money*



We ended up **out of pocket** when no one wanted to buy our ice cream.

*with less money than we started with*



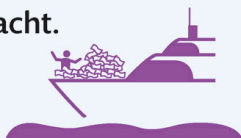
Getting the car fixed will be expensive, but luckily I have **saved for a rainy day**.

*saved money for when it might be needed unexpectedly*



Mike is **rolling in it**. He's just bought himself another yacht.

*extremely rich*



The stall is closing in an hour, so it's selling its sandwiches at **rock-bottom prices**.

*very low prices*



My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her **money doesn't grow on trees!**

*there is only a limited amount of money*



Vegetables don't have to be expensive. Carrots and cabbage are **dirt cheap** at this store.

*extremely cheap*



Aa

## 32.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I loved looking after Nadia's cat while she was on vacation. It was easy money.

1



If you don't turn off the lights when you leave the house, you're throwing money down the drain.

2



My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees!

3



It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to throw money around.

4



Vegetables don't have to be expensive. Carrots and cabbage are dirt cheap at this store.

Aa

## 32.3 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

CHEAP

*dirt cheap*

EXPENSIVE

pricey ~~dirt cheap~~ rock-bottom prices  
a hefty sum cost next to nothing a rip-off

Aa

## 32.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

money doesn't

a rainy day

1

tighten

rich

2

saved for

grow on trees

3

out of

his belt

4

struck it

in it

5

rolling

pocket



### 32.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A If you don't turn off the lights when you leave the house, you're throwing money down the drain. ☐
- B Sarah had to pay through the nose to get a taxi home after she missed the last train. ☐
- C My uncle started his own business a few years ago, and now he's really well off. ☒ 1
- D The stall is closing in an hour, so it's selling its sandwiches at rock-bottom prices. ☐
- E My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees! ☐
- F Luisa had to pay a hefty sum to get a ticket for the game today. ☐

Aa

### 32.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to throw money around.



- 3 Luna wants to buy a house soon, so she's building up \_\_\_\_\_.



- 1 I found it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ when I was a student, so I started working in a café.



- 4 Marco had to \_\_\_\_\_, so he started bringing his own lunch to work.



- 2 Aranza and Dominic decided to \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the meal.



- 5 Getting the car fixed will be expensive, but luckily I have \_\_\_\_\_.

# 33 Shopping

## 33.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT SHOPPING

I like to **shop around** before I buy a new sofa.

*compare prices at various stores*



Be careful, Max! That vase **cost a fortune**.

*cost a lot of money*



Tourists usually **pay over the odds** when they buy souvenirs. (UK)

*pay more than is typical*



My new suit **cost an arm and a leg**. I bought it from a tailor in Milan.

*cost a large amount of money*



Adrian loves to **go bargain-hunting** at his local market.

*search for goods that are cheaper than normal*



Martina found a designer jacket for **a steal** at a thrift store.

*a very low price or good bargain*



Most customers prefer to buy **off-the-shelf** products because they are cheaper.

*mass-produced, commercially available*



During the sales, many stores **slash prices** by more than 50 percent.

*reduce prices dramatically*



A valuable painting **went under the hammer** and sold for £3 million last week. (UK)

*was sold at an auction*



Javier **drove a hard bargain**, refusing to drop the price of his house.

*was a tough negotiator*



The taxi from the airport cost more than \$70. It was **highway robbery!** (US)

*far more expensive than it should have been*



For her 50th birthday, Davina decided to **splurge** on a new sports car.

*spend money extravagantly*



After winning the lottery, Tomás **went on a shopping spree.**

*bought a large number of things*



This store sells designer labels at **bargain-basement prices.**

*very low prices*



Ayesha **goes window shopping** with her friends every Saturday.

*looks at goods in store windows without buying them*



Hannah needed a new party dress and found **a good deal** online.

*a good price*



On the last day of the sales, Sam and Hiromi **shopped till they dropped.**

*did a lot of shopping*



Austin needed some **retail therapy**, so he spent the afternoon at the mall.

*shopping as a way of getting rid of stress*



It was so quiet on Monday that we decided to **close up shop** for the afternoon. (US)

*close a business temporarily or permanently*



We **were on a tight budget** for our vacation, so we stayed in a cheap hostel.

*had a small amount of money to spend*





Aa

### 33.2 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

CHEAP

*a good deal*

EXPENSIVE

highway robbery

~~a good deal~~

bargain-basement prices

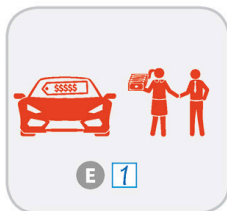
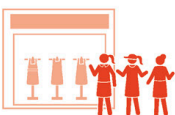
cost an arm and a leg

pay over the odds

slash prices



### 33.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☐D ☐E ☒ 1F ☐G ☐H ☐I ☐

Aa

### 33.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Tourists usually pay over the odds when they buy souvenirs.

**They pay too much.** ☒

**They pay the right amount.** ☐

**They don't pay enough.** ☐

- 1 Adrian loves to go bargain-hunting at his local market.

**He looks for expensive things.** ☐

**He doesn't care what things cost.** ☐

**He looks for cheap things.** ☐

- 2 Martina found a designer jacket for a steal at a thrift store.

**She stole the jacket.** ☐

**The jacket was cheap.** ☐

**The jacket was expensive.** ☐

- 3 During the sales, many stores slash prices by more than 50 percent.

**They increase prices.** ☐

**They reduce prices a bit.** ☐

**They reduce prices a lot.** ☐

- 4 Ayesha goes window shopping with her friends every Saturday.

**Ayesha buys things.** ☐

**Ayesha doesn't buy anything.** ☐

**Ayesha buys windows.** ☐

- 5 On the last day of the sales, Sam and Hiromi shopped till they dropped.

**They bought lots of things.** ☐

**They didn't buy much.** ☐

**They fell over.** ☐

## 33.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We were on a short budget for our vacation, so we stayed in a cheap hostel. ☐

We were on a tight budget for our vacation, so we stayed in a cheap hostel. ☒

1



My new suit cost an arm and a leg. I bought it from a tailor in Milan. ☐

My new suit cost a hand and a foot. I bought it from a tailor in Milan. ☐

2



After winning the lottery, Tomás went on a shopping ride. ☐

After winning the lottery, Tomás went on a shopping spree. ☐

3



The taxi from the airport cost more than \$70. It was highway robbery! ☐

The taxi from the airport cost more than \$70. It was highway stealing! ☐

4



Austin needed some retail therapy, so he spent the afternoon at the mall. ☐

Austin needed some shopping therapy, so he spent the afternoon at the mall. ☐

5



This store sells designer labels at bargain-attic prices. ☐

This store sells designer labels at bargain-basement prices. ☐

6



Javier ran a hard bargain, refusing to drop the price of his house. ☐

Javier drove a hard bargain, refusing to drop the price of his house. ☐

## 33.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

close a business temporarily or permanently = c l o s e u p s h o p

1 spend money extravagantly = s \_\_\_\_\_

2 compare prices at various stores = s \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_

3 pay more than is typical = p \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_

4 reduce prices dramatically = s \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_

5 cost a lot of money = c \_\_\_\_\_ a f \_\_\_\_\_

# 34 Time

## 34.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT TIME

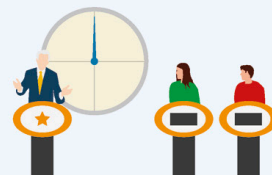
Júlio **took his time** finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.

*took the necessary time; didn't rush*



**Time's up!** I need you to give me an answer now.

*You have no more time to complete a task.*



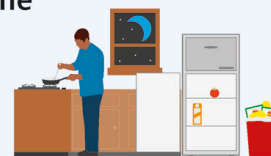
Victoria is always **on time** for her English class.

*punctual*



Huan only cooks at home **once in a blue moon**.

*very rarely*



You'll have to wait **until the cows come home** before Yuri fixes your car.

*an extremely long time*



That meeting really **dragged on**. Colm was almost asleep by the end.

*lasted far too long*



The teacher told Cory to stop **wasting time** on his phone.

*spending time in an unproductive way*



We must **get a move on** or we'll miss the start of the play.

*hurry up*



Driving to work during rush hour is such a **drag**. The traffic's terrible!

*a boring experience that passes very slowly*



It's been **ages** since I last went to the circus. I haven't been since I was a child.

*a very long time*



Today has **flown by**, and I still have so much work to do!

*passed very quickly or too quickly*



It's nearly midnight. It's **about time** we went home.

*past the appropriate time*



Finley's growing up so quickly! He was walking **before we knew it**.

*unexpectedly soon or quickly*



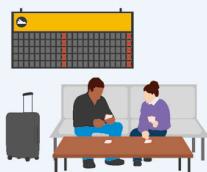
We arrived **in the nick of time**. The train was about to leave.

*at the last possible moment*



Our flight was delayed for a few hours, so we **killed time** playing cards.

*kept busy while waiting*



## 34.2 PARTS OF THE DAY

We were up **at the crack of dawn** to catch our flight.

*extremely early in the morning*



Ren arrived **bright and early** for his first day at work.

*early in the morning*



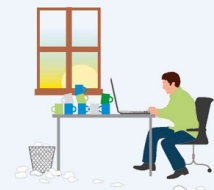
I was woken in **the dead of night** by a loud noise outside.

*the middle of the night; the quietest part of the night*



I worked on my assignment **from dusk till dawn**.

*through the whole night*



Fred stayed up until **the wee hours**, chatting with his grandfather.

*very late at night*



Aa

## 34.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |              |   |           |
|---|--------------|---|-----------|
|   | in the nick  | → | move on   |
| 1 | get a        |   | blue moon |
| 2 | from dusk    | → | of time   |
| 3 | once in a    |   | till dawn |
| 4 | before we    |   | of dawn   |
| 5 | at the crack |   | knew it   |



## 34.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- |   |                      |                                     |
|---|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A | a drag               | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| B | at the crack of dawn | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| C | bright and early     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| D | dragged on           | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| E | ages                 | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| F | flown by             | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| G | killed time          | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| H | the dead of night    | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

Aa

## 34.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



You'll have to wait until the ~~sheep~~ / ~~pigs~~ / ~~cows~~ come home before Yuri fixes your car.



1 Time's ~~out~~ / ~~up~~ / ~~off~~! I need you to give me an answer now.



2 The teacher told Cory to stop ~~wasting~~ / ~~losing~~ / ~~using~~ time on his phone.



3 I was woken in the ~~death~~ / ~~die~~ / ~~dead~~ of night by a loud noise outside.



4 We were up at the ~~split~~ / ~~crack~~ / ~~gap~~ of dawn to catch our flight.



5 That meeting really ~~slowed~~ / ~~crawled~~ / ~~dragged~~ on. Colm was almost asleep by the end.



Aa

## 34.6 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

kept busy while waiting

Time's up!

1 unexpectedly soon or quickly

before we knew it

2 very late at night

killed time

3 You have no more time to complete a task.

a drag

4 a boring experience that passes very slowly

the wee hours

5 at the last possible moment

flown by

6 passed very quickly or too quickly

in the nick of time

Aa

## 34.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



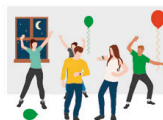
We must get a move on or we'll miss the start of the play.



3 Ren arrived \_\_\_\_\_ for his first day at work.



1 Júlio \_\_\_\_\_ finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.



4 It's nearly midnight. It's \_\_\_\_\_ we went home.



2 Victoria is always \_\_\_\_\_ for her English class.



5 Huan only cooks at home \_\_\_\_\_.

# 35 Clothes

## 35.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT CLOTHES

When Juan won the national art prize, it was **a feather in his cap**.

*an achievement to be proud of*



Pedro's upset about failing the test. You'll have to **handle him with kid gloves**.

*treat him very carefully or sensitively*



If Sven wins the race, I'll **eat my hat**!

*I'll be amazed (but I doubt it will happen)*



I **take my hat off to** Jo for collecting so much money for charity this year.

*I am very impressed with*



My daughter thinks my taste in music is really **old hat**.

*old-fashioned*



My boss got very **hot under the collar** when I handed my report in late.

*agitated and angry*



The movie was a spy thriller with lots of **cloak-and-dagger** action.

*involving mystery, spying, or things that happen in secret*



Our plan to improve sales didn't work, but I have a new plan **up my sleeve**.

*ready, but not yet common knowledge*



Jane **has a bee in her bonnet** about people dropping litter on the sidewalk.

*gets very angry and annoyed*



Ian's become **too big for his boots** since his promotion. He always ignores me. (UK)

*arrogant or self-important*



We need to **roll up our sleeves** if we're going to finish painting the house today.

*get ready to work hard*



Cathy had been **lining her pockets** with company funds for years before the boss caught her.

*making money illegally, often by corruption*



Austin is in a lot of trouble. I wouldn't want to be **in his shoes**.

*in his situation*



This steak really is **as tough as shoe leather**. I need a sharper knife! (US)

*difficult to cut or chew*



If Gavin doesn't start working harder, we'll have to **give him the boot**.

*force him to leave his job*



My teacher explained that I would fail the exam if I didn't **pull my socks up**. (UK)

*start working harder*



My cousin is very emotional. He'll start an argument **at the drop of a hat**.

*immediately, or without thinking too much about it*



Carter is such a **clever clogs**. He's always the first to raise his hand in class. (UK)

*a person who likes to show how intelligent they are*



I don't think he thought about what he was saying. It was just an **off-the-cuff** comment.

*unprepared and spontaneous*



After working at the bank for 30 years, it was time for me to **hang up my boots**.

*retire*



## 35.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- I take my hat off to Jo
- 1 We need to roll up our sleeves
- 2 If Gavin doesn't start working harder,
- 3 Austin is in a lot of trouble.
- 4 My boss got very hot under the collar
- 5 The movie was a spy thriller
- 6 If Sven wins the race,
- 7 My daughter thinks my taste
- 8 Jane has a bee in her bonnet
- we'll have to give him the boot.
- when I handed my report in late.
- for collecting so much money for charity this year.
- if we're going to finish painting the house today.
- I wouldn't want to be in his shoes.
- about people dropping litter on the sidewalk.
- in music is really old hat.
- I'll eat my hat!
- with lots of cloak-and-dagger action.

## 35.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I don't think he thought about what he was saying. It was just an **off-the-sleeve** comment.

I don't think he thought about what he was saying. It was just an off-the-cuff comment.



- 1 Pedro's upset about failing the test. You'll have to **handle him with kid socks**.



- 2 Ian's become **too big for his shoes** since his promotion. He always ignores me.



- 3 When Juan won the national art prize, it was **a feather in his hat**.



- 4 My teacher explained that I would fail the exam if I didn't **pull my shoes up**.





### 35.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Jane has a bee in her bonnet about people dropping litter on the sidewalk.

3



Carter is such \_\_\_\_\_ . He's always the first to raise his hand in class.

1



This steak really is \_\_\_\_\_ . I need a sharper knife!

4



After working at the bank for 30 years, it was time for me to \_\_\_\_\_ .

2



My cousin is very emotional. He'll start an argument \_\_\_\_\_ .

5



We need to \_\_\_\_\_ if we're going to finish painting the house today.

## Aa

### 35.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

start working harder

= p u l l m y s o c k s u p

1 force him to leave his job

= g \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_

2 ready, but not yet common knowledge

= u \_\_\_\_\_ m \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_

3 in his situation

= i \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_

4 get ready to work hard

= r \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_

5 retire

= h \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_ m \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_

6 unprepared and spontaneous

= o \_\_\_\_\_ - t \_\_\_\_\_ - c \_\_\_\_\_

7 making money illegally

= l \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_

8 old-fashioned

= o \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_



# 36 Working and relaxing

## 36.1 WORKING HARD

Nicole's **burning the candle at both ends**.  
She must be exhausted.

*working very hard, from the early morning until late at night*



I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I **have my hands full**.

*am very busy*



Leo always **goes the extra mile** to keep our customers happy.

*makes more of an effort than expected*



It took a lot of **elbow grease** to get the old car looking good again.

*hard work or cleaning*



The police **left no stone unturned** in their efforts to solve the crime.

*did everything possible to solve a problem*



Samira was **snowed under** with complaints from unhappy customers.

*extremely busy, or overwhelmed*



Although Julie had never tried roller-skating before, she **gave it her best shot**.

*tried her best*



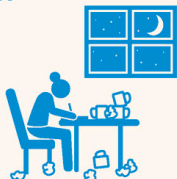
Adele's parents **pulled out all the stops** to make sure she had a wonderful 18th birthday.

*did everything possible to succeed*



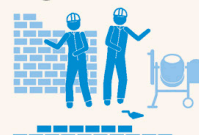
Celia had to **put her head down** and finish her essay to meet the deadline. (US)

*concentrate and work hard*



We'll have to **roll up our sleeves** if we're going to finish the building this month.

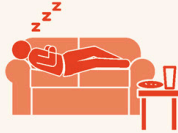
*be ready to work very hard*



## 36.2 RELAXING

Akash usually **takes 40 winks** after he's finished his lunch.

*has a short sleep*



Kelly **took a cat nap** in the afternoon sun.

*had a short sleep*



After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to **put his feet up** and watch TV.

*have a rest*



We stopped to **take a breather** before loading the rest of the boxes into the van.

*have a short break and a rest*



We were up late at our housewarming party last night, so we're **taking it easy** today.

*resting and relaxing*



## 36.3 BEING LAZY

If you **cut corners** to save time, the quality of your work will suffer.

*try to do things quickly and cheaply without thinking of quality*



Carmen is **not pulling her weight**. I found her asleep at her desk again!

*not working as hard as other members of the team*



Erik was so lazy. He **didn't lift a finger** to help us clean up after the party.

*did absolutely nothing*



Brandon is **a slacker**. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers.

*a very lazy person*



I was such **a lazybones** when I was a student. I spent most of the time playing video games.

*a lazy person*





### 36.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



A ☐



B ☐



C ☒

1



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

2



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

3



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

4



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

5



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐

Aa

### 36.5 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Kelly took a cat nap in the afternoon sun.

Kelly worked hard.

☐

Kelly had a short sleep.

☒

Kelly has a cat.

☐

- 1 Nicole's burning the candle at both ends. She must be exhausted.

She's working hard.

☐

She's lazy.

☐

She has burned herself.

☐

- 2 We stopped to take a breather before loading the rest of the boxes into the van.

We slept.

☐

We had a drink.

☐

We rested.

☐

- 3 Although Julie had never tried roller-skating before, she gave it her best shot.

Julie won the competition.

☐

Julie tried her best.

☐

Julie lost the competition.

☐

- 4 Carmen is not pulling her weight. I found her asleep at her desk again!

Carmen is sick.

☐

Carmen is on a diet.

☐

Carmen is not working hard.

☐

- 5 It took a lot of elbow grease to get the old car looking good again.

It was hard work.

☐

It needed a lot of polish.

☐

It was easy.

☐

## 36.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We were up late at our housewarming party last night, so we're taking it simple today. ☐

We were up late at our housewarming party last night, so we're taking it easy today. ☒



1 Leo always runs the extra mile to keep our customers happy. ☐

Leo always goes the extra mile to keep our customers happy. ☐



2 Akash usually takes 40 blinks after he's finished his lunch. ☐

Akash usually takes 40 winks after he's finished his lunch. ☐



3 I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I have my hands full. ☐

I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I have my arms full. ☐



4 Celia had to put her head down and finish her essay to meet the deadline. ☐

Celia had to put her face down and finish her essay to meet the deadline. ☐



5 Brandon is a relaxer. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers. ☐

Brandon is a slacker. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers. ☐



6 After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his legs up and watch TV. ☐

After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his feet up and watch TV. ☐

## 36.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

makes more of an effort than expected

=

*goes the extra mile*

1 did everything possible to succeed

=

2 be ready to work very hard

=

3 extremely busy, or overwhelmed

=

4 hard work or cleaning

=

5 did absolutely nothing

=

# 37 Movement and progress

## 37.1 IDIOMS ABOUT MOVEMENT AND PROGRESS

The traffic usually moves **at a snail's pace** during the rush hour.

*extremely slowly*



The hikers **forged ahead** in spite of the terrible snowstorm.

*made good progress*



The children threw the ball **back and forth** as they played outside.

*in one direction, then back again*



Astronauts **made great strides** in space exploration in the 1960s.

*made a lot of progress*



The guests **made a beeline** for all the cakes on the table.

*moved quickly and in a straight line toward*



Marion is going to **up sticks** and move to Bristol. (UK)

*take her belongings and move somewhere else*



I've been at my desk all day. I'm going to **stretch my legs** and make some coffee.

*go for a short walk after sitting down for a long time*



I want to buy a house this year, so I've **set the wheels in motion** and arranged some viewings.

*done something to start a process*



Our company has **blazed a trail** with these new environmentally friendly cars.

*done something that has never been done before*



I was late for my business meeting, so I had to eat lunch **on the run**. (US)

*while walking or traveling*





Maisie's restaurant is **up and running**. The first diners arrived at lunchtime.

*open and working well*



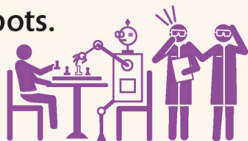
I'm **running around like a headless chicken** trying to get the meal ready for my guests tonight.

*rushing around trying to do too many things at once*



Scientists are **on the verge of** developing intelligent robots.

*very close to doing something*



**Slowly but surely**, my daughter is learning to ride a bike.

*slowly, but at a steady rate of progress*



Julia used to be so disorganized, but has really **got her act together** recently.

*started to behave in a more organized and serious way*



After squeezing our luggage into the car, we were ready to **hit the road**.

*begin a trip or a drive*



I've been **going around in circles** trying to write this report, but I haven't been given enough information.

*not making any progress*



After losing a few games earlier this month, the team is **back on track** now.

*working well again after experiencing problems*



The client hates my design for the company logo, so **it's back to the drawing board**.

*I have to start again or try another idea*



We had just finished repairing the road and now it has been damaged in a storm. It's **back to square one**.

*back to the beginning*



## 37.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

Julia used to be so disorganized, but has really got her act together recently.

1 The client hates my design for the company logo, so to board drawing back it's the.

2 The traffic usually moves pace snail's a at during the rush hour.

3 The guests a for made beeline all the cakes on the table.

4 Scientists are verge on of the developing intelligent robots.



## 37.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A I've been at my desk all day. I'm going to stretch my legs and make some coffee. ☐

B Our company has blazed a trail with these new environmentally friendly cars. ☐

C I want to buy a house this year, so I've set the wheels in motion and arranged some viewings. ☒ 1

D After losing a few games earlier this month, the team is back on track now. ☐

E Marion is going to up sticks and move to Bristol. ☐

Aa

## 37.4 MATCH THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

- |                           |                                   |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| back and forth            | begin a trip or a drive           |
| 1 hit the road            | not making any progress           |
| 2 up and running          | in one direction, then back again |
| 3 back to square one      | made a lot of progress            |
| 4 going around in circles | open and working well             |
| 5 made great strides      | back to the beginning             |

Aa

## 37.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



I've been at my desk all day. I'm going to stretch my legs and make some coffee.



- 1 The hikers \_\_\_\_\_ in spite of the terrible snowstorm.



- 2 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ trying to get the meal ready for my guests tonight.



- 3 \_\_\_\_\_, my daughter is learning to ride a bike.



- 4 I was late for my business meeting, so I had to eat lunch \_\_\_\_\_.



- 5 The children threw the ball \_\_\_\_\_ as they played outside.

# 38 Rules, law, and authority

## 38.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT RULES AND THE LAW

It's important to **obey the law** when you're cycling in the city.

*follow the commands of the law*



Ben **suffered the consequences** of his misbehavior and had to wash the car.

*was punished for something*



Gavin **broke the law** when he drove through a red light.

*disobeyed the law*



Since leaving jail, Crystal has **kept on the straight and narrow**.

*stayed out of trouble*



Danielle decided to **bend the rules** and let her kids stay up later than usual.

*relax the rules a little*



It was the first time Raul had been caught speeding, so the police **let him off the hook**.

*chose not to punish him*



## 38.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE BODY

We have a meeting with **the head** of our department every week.

*the person with the most authority*



Seth **took the law into his own hands** and confronted the vandals.

*dealt with crime without using the legal system*



Carla refused to **toe the line** and wear the same uniform as the other students.

*follow or conform to the rules*



Despite being rude to a customer, Ed only received **a slap on the wrist**, and got a verbal warning.

*a minor punishment*



It's the children who **rule the roost** in Kaylee's family. They don't respect her.

*have control*



The vandals **got their just deserts** and had to do community service.

*received the punishment they deserved*



Paul has really **crossed the line** this time. He's eaten all his sister's birthday cake.

*behaved in a very inappropriate way*



It was the **day of reckoning**. The judge was about to sentence Mason for burglary.

*day when someone finds out the consequences of their actions*



The jury discussed the evidence and **reached a verdict** after two days.

*decided whether someone was guilty or innocent*



Chrissie **calls the shots** in our restaurant. She decides what's on the menu.

*has the authority or power*



Pedro's father **put his foot down** and refused to let him watch TV.

*made a firm decision*



The party **got out of hand**, so the neighbors called the police.

*became impossible to control*



Leah's manager **twisted her arm**, and she agreed to work late.

*put pressure on her*



Jack's boss is always **breathing down his neck**. He wants more independence.

*watching or supervising him too closely*







### 38.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

let him off the hook	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	rule the roost	<input type="checkbox"/>	put his foot down	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 crossed the line	<input type="checkbox"/>	a slap on the wrist	<input type="checkbox"/>	calls the shots	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 got out of hand	<input type="checkbox"/>	bend the rules	<input type="checkbox"/>	broke the law	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 toe the line	<input type="checkbox"/>	obey the law	<input type="checkbox"/>	twisted her arm	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 reached a verdict	<input type="checkbox"/>	broke the law	<input type="checkbox"/>	suffered the consequences	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 got their just deserts	<input type="checkbox"/>	calls the shots	<input type="checkbox"/>	crossed the line	<input type="checkbox"/>

Aa

### 38.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



It's the children who rule the roost in Kaylee's family. They don't respect her.



Paul has really crossed the line this time. He's eaten all his sister's birthday cake.



It was the day of reckoning. The judge was about to sentence Mason for burglary.



Seth took the law into his own hands and confronted the vandals.



It's important to obey the law when you're cycling in the city.



Ben suffered the consequences of his misbehavior and had to wash the car.

Aa

## 38.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Danielle decided to **twist the rules** and let her kids stay up later than usual.

*Danielle decided to bend the rules and let her kids stay up later than usual.*



- 1 Carla refused to **walk the line** and wear the same uniform as the other students.



- 2 Jack's boss is always **breathing down his ear**. He wants more independence.



- 3 The party **got out of reach**, so the neighbors called the police.



- 4 Since leaving jail, Crystal has **kept on the strict and narrow**.



- 5 Pedro's father **put his leg down** and refused to let him watch TV.



Aa

## 38.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

received the punishment they deserved

=

*got their just deserts*

- 1 chose not to punish him

=

- 2 decided whether someone was guilty or innocent

=

- 3 put pressure on her

=

- 4 the person with the most authority

=

- 5 has the authority or power

=

- 6 a minor punishment

=

# 39 Success and failure

## 39.1 SUCCESS

Melissa did really well in the race.  
She **won it hands down**.

*won it easily and with  
little effort*



Jane really **nailed it** with her jokes.  
The audience loved her.

*was successful, popular, or accurate*



Malik's band has **hit the big time**.  
It performed at the national  
stadium last night.

*become very successful*



Nathan's first book was **an overnight success**. It sold a million  
copies in a month.

*successful very quickly*



Miguel has **hit the jackpot** with  
his new ice cream machine.

*become financially successful*



Tyler has finally reached **the dizzy heights** of head chef. He started out  
doing the dishes.

*a very important position*



## 39.2 FAILURE

Tim's **beating a dead horse**. Nobody  
wants to buy his old car. (US)

*wasting energy on something  
that will never succeed*



The barbecue was **an utter failure**.  
It rained and none of my  
friends turned up.

*a complete failure*



Margaret's performance **fell flat on its face**. She can't sing!

*was a complete failure*



The decorators have really  
**screwed up** this job!  
We won't use them again.

*made a mess of*



The dancers **brought the house down** with their fantastic performance.

*greatly impressed an audience*



Lucy's beauty salon is **going from strength to strength**. She's opening another soon.

*becoming increasingly successful*



I knew Helena would **go places** as an athlete. She was so good at running at school.

*become successful*



The outdoor exhibition has been **a runaway success**. Lots of people have come to see it.

*extremely successful*



The soccer tournament **ran like clockwork**. Everyone really enjoyed it.

*happened as planned, without any problems*



Erica's presentation **worked like a charm** with the investors. They loved the designs.

*was very impressive*



My dinner party started to **go sideways** when I spilled soup everywhere. (US)

*go wrong, or fail*



Kevin's career is **on the ropes**. His boss has given him an official warning.

*going badly, or failing*



Nicola's decision to take her dog shopping turned out to be **a recipe for disaster**.

*a cause of major problems*



The gang's plan to rob the bank **went belly up** when a policeman recognized Mike.

*failed completely*



Aa

## 39.3 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

## SUCCESS

*hit the big time*

## FAILURE

on the ropes

go sideways

~~hit the big time~~

screwed up

worked like a charm

brought the house down

Aa

## 39.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Tim's beating a dead horse. Nobody wants to buy his old car.



3 Nathan's first book was \_\_\_\_\_. It sold a million copies in a month.



1 The gang's plan to rob the bank \_\_\_\_\_ when a policeman recognized Mike.



4 Lucy's beauty salon is \_\_\_\_\_. She's opening another soon.



2 Nicola's decision to take her dog shopping turned out to be \_\_\_\_\_.



5 Margaret's performance \_\_\_\_\_ . She can't sing!





### 39.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT SUCCESS OR FAILURE



success ☒  
failure ☐



1 success ☐  
failure ☐



2 success ☐  
failure ☐



3 success ☐  
failure ☐



4 success ☐  
failure ☐



5 success ☐  
failure ☐



6 success ☐  
failure ☐



7 success ☐  
failure ☐



8 success ☐  
failure ☐



9 success ☐  
failure ☐

Aa

### 39.6 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

was successful, popular, or accurate

go sideways

1 won it easily and with little effort

brought the house down

2 go wrong, or fail

nailed it

3 successful very quickly

fell flat on its face

4 greatly impressed an audience

won it hands down

5 was a complete failure

a recipe for disaster

6 becoming increasingly successful

an overnight success

7 a cause of major problems

hit the jackpot

8 become financially successful

screwed up

9 made a mess of

going from strength to strength

# 40 Work and business 1

## 40.1 WORK AND BUSINESS IDIOMS

Carlos has lots of **hands-on experience** working with horses.

*knowledge and skill gained through doing something*



Our snack bars are delicious, healthy, and affordable. **In a nutshell**, your customers will love them.

*in a few words*



Rory **goes the extra mile** to make sure his customers are satisfied.

*does more than is expected*



I'm afraid Glen's busy. He's **up to his eyeballs** grading papers.

*extremely busy*



Irena's internship at the fashion firm helped her to get **a foot in the door**.

*an opportunity to start doing a new job*



Despite the snow, it's **business as usual** at the store today.

*the normal routine of a company or workplace*



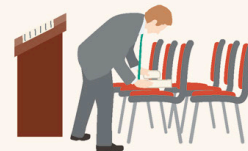
I was **fired** from my job at the salon after I dyed a customer's hair green by mistake.

*forced to leave a job*



Andrew made sure he **had his ducks in a row** before his presentation.

*had everything prepared and organized*



Sara has **handed in her notice** at work. She's going to study engineering.

*formally told her employer that she will leave her job*



We offer customers a discount when they recommend us to a friend. It's **a win-win situation**.

*a situation with a positive outcome for everyone*



Victor is **climbing the career ladder**.  
He started work as a receptionist last year and he's already a manager.

*getting higher pay and more responsibility at work*



After studying for many years, Anna **embarked on a career** as a surgeon.

*started a new career*



Maya is a great designer. She always **thinks outside the box**.

*thinks about things in an original way*



We're **working around the clock** to make sure the new subway line opens on time.

*working all day and night*



I'm afraid Katya can't come to the phone. She's **tied up** in meetings all morning.

*busy doing something else*



## 40.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "JOB"

I'm really bored at work, so I've decided to start **job hunting**.

*looking for a new job*



Working at the kindergarten is tiring, but the **job satisfaction** is high.

*the pleasure you get from work*



Miguel has just **landed a job** at a photography firm in San Francisco.

*found a good job*



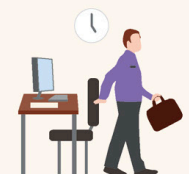
I'm surprised Cheryl has managed to **hold down a job** at the store for so long. She's always being rude to customers.

*keep a job*



I used to work night shifts, but now I have **a nine-to-five job**.

*a job with regular daytime hours, from Monday to Friday*



## 40.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to eyeballs his up

I'm afraid Glen's busy. He's up to his eyeballs grading papers.

ducks a had row his in

1 Andrew made sure he \_\_\_\_\_ before his presentation.

box the outside thinks

2 Maya is a great designer. She always \_\_\_\_\_.

in foot a door the

3 Irena's internship at the fashion firm helped her to get \_\_\_\_\_.

the working clock around

4 We're \_\_\_\_\_ to make sure the new subway line opens on time.



## 40.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



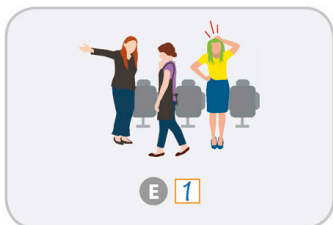
B ☐



C ☐



D ☐



E ☒



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

## 40.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Despite the snow, it's business as ~~normal~~ / ~~usual~~ / ~~ever~~ at the store today.

1



Carlos has lots of ~~hands-on~~ / ~~head-on~~ / ~~hands-up~~ experience working with horses.

2



Sara has handed in her ~~letter~~ / ~~statement~~ / ~~notice~~ at work. She's going to study engineering.

3



After studying for many years, Anna embarked on a ~~job~~ / ~~career~~ / ~~work~~ as a surgeon.

4



I'm really bored at work, so I've decided to start job ~~looking~~ / ~~searching~~ / ~~hunting~~.

5



Rory goes the extra ~~distance~~ / ~~mile~~ / ~~length~~ to make sure his customers are satisfied.

## 40.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

the pleasure you get from work

= j o b s a t i s f a c t i o n

1 found a good job

= l \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ j \_ \_

2 in a few words

= i \_ a \_ n \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

3 busy doing something else

= t \_ \_ \_ \_ u \_

4 does more than is expected

= g \_ \_ \_ t \_ e \_ \_ \_ m \_ \_ \_

5 forced to leave a job

= f \_ \_ \_ \_



# 41 Work and business 2

## 41.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT COLORS

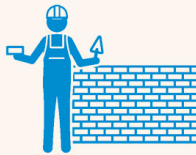
There's a lot of **red tape** involved in health and safety in the warehouse.

*administration, paperwork, or rules and regulations*



My dad had a **blue-collar job** in the construction industry.

*a job that involves manual or physical work*



Our ski clothing stores are **in the red** because there hasn't been any snow this winter.

*losing money, or in debt*



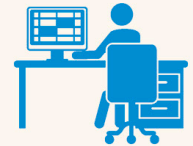
We decided to **blacklist** this supplier after they sent us faulty products.

*put on a list of untrustworthy people or organizations*



I have a **white-collar job** in an investment bank.

*an office-based or administrative job*



Boris was given a **golden handshake** when he retired from the company. (UK)

*a payment or gift from a company to someone who is leaving it*



## 41.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT SPORTS

We've already reduced our price by 25 percent. **The ball is in your court.**

*It is your turn to act.*



We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create a **level playing field.**

*an environment in which everyone has equal opportunities*



Our boss is leaving the restaurant soon, and Angela is **the front-runner** to get his job.

*the person or organization most likely to win something*



Emily is a **team player.** She works so well with all her colleagues at the bookstore.

*a person who works well with other people*



### 41.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

Our new bags are **selling like hotcakes**.  
We need to order more.

*selling quickly in large numbers*



After many years in journalism, Simon became **a big cheese** in the media.

*an important person in a company or industry*



Evan is always asking me what to do. I feel like I have to **spoon-feed** him.

*give too much help to*



My gardening business is starting to **bring home the bacon**.

*make money*



I play in a band every weekend, but teaching guitar is my **bread and butter**.

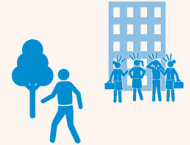
*main source of income*



### 41.4 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

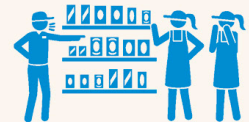
I've decided to leave **the rat race** and move to the country.

*a way of urban working life that puts people under pressure*



Raul isn't our boss, but he still tries to be **the top dog** in our team. He's always telling us what to do.

*the most important person*



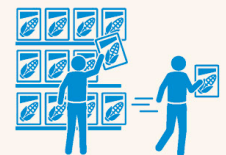
We made **the lion's share** of our profits last year from our new smartphone.

*the largest part*



Our range of cereal is **a cash cow**. It's cheap to make and customers love it.

*a product or investment that gives you a steady income*



My boss is **a fat cat**. He earns lots of money, but doesn't work very hard.

*an overpaid and lazy person*



## 41.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- I play in a band every weekend,
- 1 I've decided to leave the rat race
- 2 My dad had a blue-collar job
- 3 We decided to blacklist this supplier
- 4 After many years in journalism,
- 5 There's a lot of red tape involved
- after they sent us faulty products.
- in the construction industry.
- but teaching guitar is my bread and butter.
- and move to the country.
- in health and safety in the warehouse.
- Simon became a big cheese in the media.



## 41.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



There's a lot of red tape involved in health and safety in the warehouse.



3 I have \_\_\_\_\_ in an investment bank.



1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create \_\_\_\_\_.



4 Our new bags are \_\_\_\_\_. We need to order more.



2 Our range of cereal is \_\_\_\_\_. It's cheap to make and customers love it.



5 Evan is always asking me what to do. I feel like I have to \_\_\_\_\_ him.

Aa

## 41.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

My boss is **a lazy cat**. He earns lots of money, but doesn't work very hard.

*My boss is a fat cat. He earns lots of money, but doesn't work very hard.*



- 1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create **an equal playing field**.



- 2 Emily is **a sporting player**. She works so well with all her colleagues at the bookstore.



- 3 Our boss is leaving the restaurant soon, and Angela is **the front-winner** to get his job.



- 4 We've already reduced our price by 25 percent. **The ball is in your field**.



- 5 I play in a band every weekend, but teaching guitar is **my bread and cheese**.



- 6 Boris was given **a silver handshake** when he retired from the company.



Aa

## 41.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

a person who works well with other people

=

*a team player*

- 1 losing money, or in debt

=

\_\_\_\_\_

- 2 make money

=

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 the largest part

=

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 the most important person

=

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 an office-based or administrative job

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 42 Sports

## 42.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT SPORTS

The party was already **in full swing** when we arrived.

*very busy and lively*



I've failed my driving test for the tenth time. I think it's time to **throw in the towel**.

*admit defeat, or stop trying to do something*



Bruno has taken my parking space at work again. Right, **the gloves are off**!

*an argument or competition will be very intense*



Hiroto is really **on the ball** and never makes a mistake at work.

*alert and efficient*



Our client **threw us a curveball** when she said we'd have to cater for another 50 guests at her wedding.

*did something surprising that was difficult to deal with*



I often have to work evenings, but I **knew the score** when I decided to accept this job.

*understood a situation, especially its disadvantages*



This client keeps **moving the goalposts**. Now she wants the bedroom painted red.

*changing the desired end result*



We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to **sink or swim**.

*succeed by their own efforts, or fail*



**At this stage of the game**, it's difficult to say how long it will take to fix your roof.

*at this point in the process*



I was having a difficult meeting with my boss, but was **saved by the bell** when he got called into another meeting.

*rescued from a difficult situation at the last minute*





I'm trying to start my own business, and **cleared a hurdle** today when the bank agreed to lend me money.

*successfully dealt with a problem*



I've had cats and rabbits before, but looking after a dog is **a whole new ball game**.

*a completely different situation*



Sleepless nights are **par for the course** when you have a baby.

*to be expected*



We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's **get the ball rolling**.

*start a process*



The service in this restaurant is really **below par**. We've been waiting for our food for an hour!

*not to the expected standard*



The firefighters **tackled** the fire at the warehouse and made sure everyone got out safely.

*dealt with*



I'm sorry you didn't get through to the next round, Cameron. **You win some, you lose some!**

*You can't succeed at everything.*



I was **thrown in at the deep end** when my colleague was sick and I had to run the café on my own on my first day.

*put in an unexpected and difficult situation*



The plumber gave us **a ballpark figure** for the cost of the new bathroom.

*an estimate*



All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is **in a league of her own**.

*outstanding; exceptionally talented*



## 42.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Sleepless nights are par for the field when you have a baby. ☐

Sleepless nights are par for the course when you have a baby. ☒

① All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a league of her own. ☐

All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a game of her own. ☐

② This client keeps moving the net. Now she wants the bedroom painted red. ☐

This client keeps moving the goalposts. Now she wants the bedroom painted red. ☐

③ We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or float. ☐

We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or swim. ☐

④ We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball rolling. ☐

We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball going. ☐

⑤ I often have to work evenings, but I knew the score when I decided to accept this job. ☐

I often have to work evenings, but I knew the goal when I decided to accept this job. ☐

## 42.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

changing the desired end result

① successfully dealt with a problem

② very busy and lively

③ an estimate

④ to be expected

⑤ not to the expected standard

⑥ alert and efficient

⑦ start a process

a ballpark figure

par for the course

moving the goalposts

in full swing

cleared a hurdle

on the ball

get the ball rolling

below par



## 42.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

on the ball	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	a whole new ball game	<input type="checkbox"/>	get the ball rolling	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 moving the goalposts	<input type="checkbox"/>	the gloves are off	<input type="checkbox"/>	in full swing	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 at this stage of the game	<input type="checkbox"/>	a whole new ball game	<input type="checkbox"/>	sink or swim	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 throw in the towel	<input type="checkbox"/>	cleared a hurdle	<input type="checkbox"/>	thrown in at the deep end	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 saved by the bell	<input type="checkbox"/>	a ballpark figure	<input type="checkbox"/>	below par	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 throw in the towel	<input type="checkbox"/>	saved by the bell	<input type="checkbox"/>	threw us a curveball	<input type="checkbox"/>

## Aa

## 42.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



The party was already in full swing when we arrived.



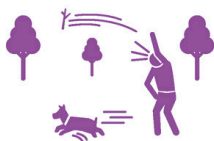
3 The plumber gave us \_\_\_\_\_ for the cost of the new bathroom.



1 The firefighters \_\_\_\_\_ the fire at the warehouse and made sure everyone got out safely.



4 I'm sorry you didn't get through to the next round, Cameron. \_\_\_\_\_



2 I've had cats and rabbits before, but looking after a dog is \_\_\_\_\_.



5 I've failed my driving test for the tenth time. I think it's time to \_\_\_\_\_.

# 43 “Make” and “do”

## 43.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH “MAKE”

I **made some friends** from the local area while I was on vacation.



I was really pleased when Sue **made a cake** for my birthday.



These desserts all look so good! It's difficult to **make a choice**.



I **made a phone call** to our client in India to discuss some important business.



Doug is **making progress** on his new novel and hopes to finish it soon.



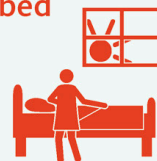
I was quite offended when Laura **made a joke** about my new sweater.



We're **making arrangements** for our summer vacation in Italy.



My daughter always **makes her bed** in the morning.



The children had fun painting, but they've really **made a mess**.



There's something wrong with the photocopier. It's **making a strange noise**.



### 43.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "DO"

Luiz **does the cooking** every evening after he gets home from work.



Katy is **doing well** in her new job. She's getting lots of customers.



We **did an experiment** in the laboratory as part of our research project.



**Do your best** in the game today! I know you can beat the other team.



Paul and Liam **do the laundry** every Sunday so that they have clean clothes for work.



Can you **do me a favor** and get that book down from the shelf?



Zoe **did her hair** before her best friend's engagement party.



The flood **did** a lot of **damage** to our house, so we had to move out.



I always **do my homework** as soon as I get home from school.



I want to get fit, so I've started **doing exercise** every day.





## 43.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

These desserts all look so good! It's difficult to **make** / ~~do~~ a choice.

- 1 Doug is **making** / **doing** progress on his new novel and hopes to finish it soon.
- 2 I want to get fit, so I've started **making** / **doing** exercise every day.
- 3 **Make** / **Do** your best in the game today! I know you can beat the other team.
- 4 There's something wrong with the photocopier. It's **making** / **doing** a strange noise.
- 5 I always **make** / **do** my homework as soon as I get home from school.
- 6 The children had fun painting, but they've really **made** / **done** a mess.
- 7 Can you **make** / **do** me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

## 43.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We're making arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.  
We're doing arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.

☒  
☐

1



Zoe made her hair before her best friend's engagement party.  
Zoe did her hair before her best friend's engagement party.

☐  
☐

2



I made a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business.  
I did a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business.

☐  
☐

3



I was quite offended when Laura made a joke about my new sweater.  
I was quite offended when Laura did a joke about my new sweater.

☐  
☐

4



The flood made a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.  
The flood did a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.

☐  
☐

5



We made an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.  
We did an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.

☐  
☐



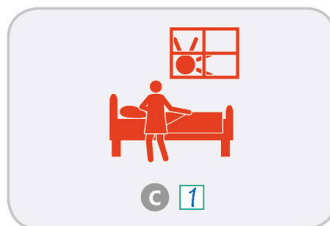
### 43.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

## Aa

### 43.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT FORM OF "MAKE" OR "DO"

Katy is doing well in her new job. She's getting lots of customers.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ some friends from the local area while I was on vacation.
- 2 I always \_\_\_\_\_ my homework as soon as I get home from school.
- 3 We're \_\_\_\_\_ arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.
- 4 I was really pleased when Sue \_\_\_\_\_ a cake for my birthday.
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.
- 6 I was quite offended when Laura \_\_\_\_\_ a joke about my new sweater.
- 7 The flood \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.
- 8 I want to get fit, so I've started \_\_\_\_\_ exercise every day.
- 9 My daughter always \_\_\_\_\_ her bed in the morning.
- 10 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

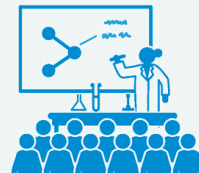
# 44 "Give" and "take"

## 44.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "GIVE"

The interviewers asked me to **give an example** of my best work.



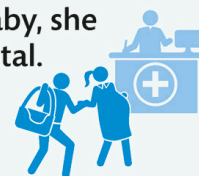
The professor **gave a speech** to the students about her new discovery.



I had a big suitcase, so Selma offered to **give me a lift** to the airport.



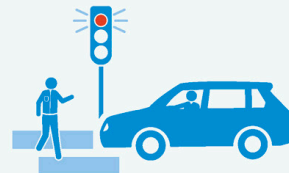
When Carole had her first baby, she chose to **give birth** in a hospital.



The dog **gave the impression** that he wanted to go out for a walk.



Drivers should always **give priority** to pedestrians.



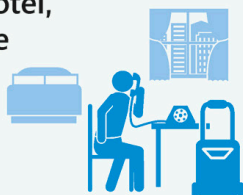
Emily is **giving a presentation** about the company's sales figures.



My father **gave me a hug** when he heard I'd passed my final exam.



When Danny got to the hotel, he **gave me a call** to say he had arrived safely.

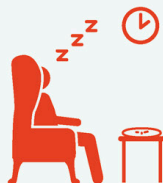


The journalist kept asking the politician to **give an answer** to the question.



## 44.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "TAKE"

Jorge gets up very early, so he usually **takes a nap** after lunch.



Fiona asked us to **take a look** at her new motorcycle. She's really proud of it.



Zora **took a bite** from her piece of birthday cake. It was delicious!



Mario and I are **taking a** drawing **class** this evening.



Hamid **took a photo** of his class in front of the Colosseum.



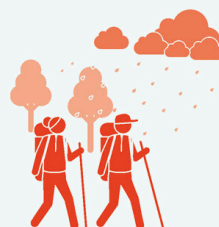
The receptionist asked me to **take a seat** while I waited for the hairdresser.



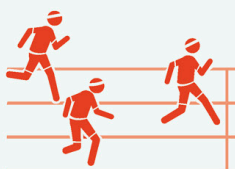
Dwayne likes to **take a shower** as soon as he gets home from work.



We decided to **take a chance** with the weather and set off on our hike.



Near the end of the race, Axel passed the other athletes and **took the lead**.



Oscar had to **take a** fitness **test** before working as a police officer.



## Aa 44.3 WRITE THE EXPRESSIONS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT VERBS

GIVE

*a presentation*

TAKE

~~a presentation~~    an example    a photo  
a chance    the impression    a nap    birth  
a bite    a shower    a seat    a speech    priority  
me a hug    the lead    an answer    a look

## Aa 44.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Dwayne likes to take a shower as soon as he gets home from work.



Zora took a bite from her piece of birthday cake. It was delicious!



Near the end of the race, Axel passed the other athletes and took the lead.



Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures.



Hamid took a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.

## Aa 44.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Dwayne likes to take a shower

that he wanted to go out for a walk.

1 I had a big suitcase, so Selma offered

a drawing class this evening.

2 The dog gave the impression

as soon as he gets home from work.

3 Mario and I are taking

to give me a lift to the airport.

4 The receptionist asked me to take

priority to pedestrians.

5 Drivers should always give

a seat while I waited for the hairdresser.





## 44.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures. ☐
- B Drivers should always give priority to pedestrians. ☒
- C Jorge gets up very early, so he usually takes a nap after lunch. ☐
- D My father gave me a hug when he heard I'd passed my final exam. ☐
- E When Carole had her first baby, she chose to give birth in a hospital. ☐
- F Oscar had to take a fitness test before working as a police officer. ☐
- G The interviewers asked me to give an example of my best work. ☐

## Aa

## 44.7 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



We decided to ~~give~~ / ~~take~~ a chance with the weather and set off on our hike.



1 When Danny got to the hotel, he ~~gave~~ / ~~took~~ me a call to say he had arrived safely.



2 Hamid ~~gave~~ / ~~took~~ a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.



3 The professor ~~gave~~ / ~~took~~ a speech to the students about her new discovery.



4 Emily is ~~giving~~ / ~~taking~~ a presentation about the company's sales figures.



5 Dwayne likes to ~~give~~ / ~~take~~ a shower as soon as he gets home from work.

# 45 “Have” and “get”

## 45.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH “HAVE”

Shreya's going to **have** a **baby** this summer.



Colin **has** a **cold**. He's staying at home today.



Lily **had** a **conversation** with another passenger on the train.



Tiffany **had** **fun** at the festival with her friends.



After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to **have** a **rest**.



Michael and Heather **had** an **argument** about the rules of the game.



Sadiq **has** **lunch** in the park when the weather's nice.



I **have** an **appointment** to see the vet at 2 o'clock this afternoon.



Kylie **had** a **party** to celebrate her 18th birthday. It was great fun!



Sean and Lisa **had** a **talk** about the new design for the office.



## 45.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "GET"

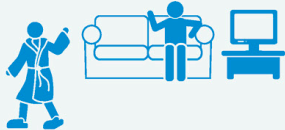
You really need to **get going** if you want to catch the train.



Kyle and Erin **got lost** in the forest when they couldn't read their map.



I need to go to bed now. I'm **getting tired**.



I usually **get dressed** after I've eaten my breakfast.



We finally **got home** at midnight after our flight was delayed.



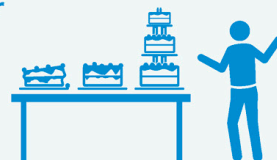
Brian and Isha **got married** on a beautiful beach in Jamaica.



It was sunny today, but the weather is going to **get worse** tomorrow.



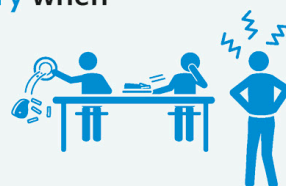
Claude is **getting better** at making cakes.



We finally **got started** on decorating the bedroom this morning.



Robin always **gets angry** when his children refuse to eat their food.



## 45.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Colin has a cold. He's staying at home today.



Colin gets a cold. He's staying at home today.



After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to have a rest.



After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to get a rest.



I need to go to bed now. I'm getting tired.



I need to go to bed now. I'm having tired.



Shreya's going to get a baby this summer.



Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.



Michael and Heather got an argument about the rules of the game.



Michael and Heather had an argument about the rules of the game.



Lily had a conversation with another passenger on the train.



Lily got a conversation with another passenger on the train.



## 45.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☒ 1D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐

## 45.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Shreya's going to **get a baby** this summer.

*Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.*



1 Robin always **has angry** when his children refuse to eat their food.



2 I **get an appointment** to see the vet at 2 o'clock this afternoon.



3 Sean and Lisa **got a talk** about the new design for the office.



4 Tiffany **got fun** at the festival with her friends.



## 45.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



I usually get dressed  
after I've eaten my breakfast.



I need to go to bed now. I'm



Kylie \_\_\_\_\_  
to celebrate her 18th birthday. It  
was great fun!



After gardening all morning, we  
were so tired that we needed to



Claude is \_\_\_\_\_  
at making cakes.



You really need to \_\_\_\_\_  
if you want to catch the train.



# 46 "Set" and "put"

## 46.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "SET"

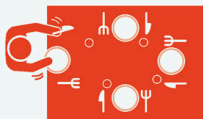
I had a long way to drive, so I **set off** nice and early.



Catalina has **set the date** for her wedding next summer.



Ed **set the table** before his guests arrived for dinner.



I **set a trap** to catch the mouse in the kitchen.



Mateo **set an example** for his children and ate all his vegetables.



I **set homework** for my students at the end of every lesson.



Silvio called the fire department after he accidentally **set fire** to his shed.



Judy was sad to see the birds trapped in their cage, so she **set them free**.



The ship **set sail** for China this morning. It will arrive in 20 days.



I have to get up early for work, so I always **set an alarm** before going to bed.



## 46.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "PUT"

I always **put off** doing my homework until the last minute.

*delay*



My boss is **putting pressure on** me to sell all this kitchen equipment today.

*trying to persuade someone to do something*



Terry **puts** his family **first**. He always leaves work in time to meet his children after school.

*gives one thing priority over everything else*



The rangers have **put a stop to** people driving through the park to cut pollution.

*made something stop happening*



Irfan has **put me in charge of** the store while he is on vacation.

*given me responsibility for*



After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I **put it in writing**.

*wrote it in a letter*



Karen decided to **put her cards on the table** and tell Ricky that she loved him.

*express her feelings openly*



Sakura has been **putting the heat on** the contractors to finish the job quickly.

*trying to force someone to do something*



Seth isn't always the most hardworking employee. To **put it bluntly**, he's lazy.

*say something simply and without being too polite*



I really **put my foot in it** when I asked if Hazel was Tamsin's mother. They are actually sisters. (UK)

*accidentally said something that upset someone*





### 46.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A My boss is putting pressure on me to sell all this kitchen equipment today. ☐
- B Ed set the table before his guests arrived for dinner. 1
- C I have to get up early for work, so I always set an alarm before going to bed. ☐
- D Irfan has put me in charge of the store while he is on vacation. ☐
- E Mateo set an example for his children and ate all his vegetables. ☐

Aa

### 46.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



1



2



3



4

After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I put it in writing.

I always put off doing my homework until the last minute.

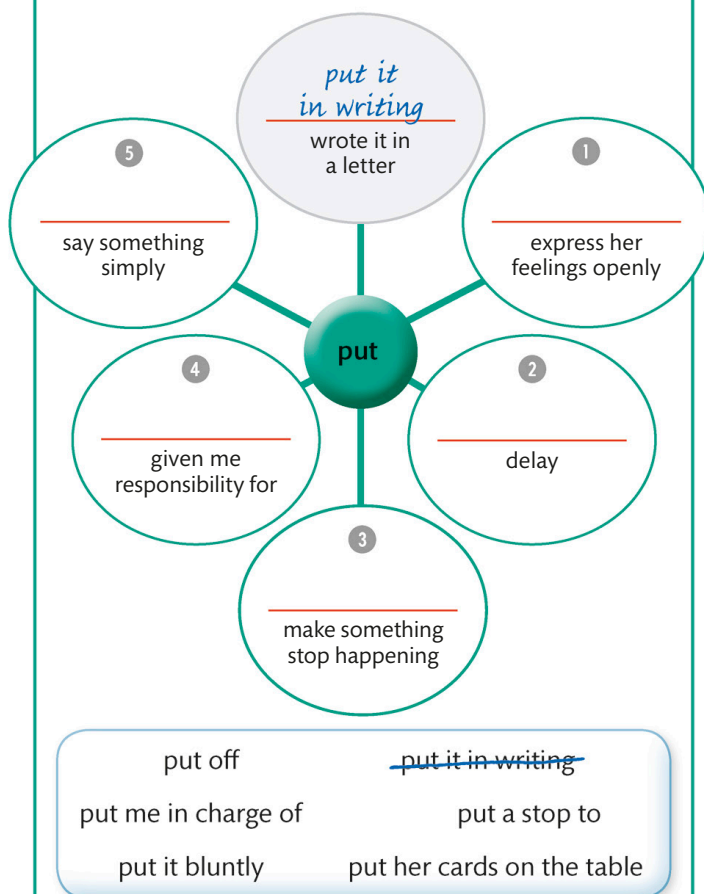
Catalina has set the date for her wedding next summer.

I had a long way to drive, so I set off nice and early.

I set homework for my students at the end of every lesson.

Aa

### 46.5 MATCH THE EXPRESSIONS TO THEIR DEFINITIONS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



## 46.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



I **set** / ~~put~~ a trap to catch the mouse in the kitchen.

1



I really **set** / **put** my foot in it when I asked if Hazel was Tamsin's mother. They are actually sisters.

2



Judy was sad to see the birds trapped in their cage, so she **set** / **put** them free.

3



The ship **set** / **put** sail for China this morning. It will arrive in 20 days.

4



Terry **sets** / **puts** his family first. He always leaves work in time to meet his children after school.

5



Sakura has been **setting** / **putting** the heat on the contractors to finish the job quickly.

## 46.7 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

My boss is putting pressure on me

1

Silvio called the fire department

2

After telling my boss I was leaving my job,

3

I had a long way to drive,

4

I always put off doing my homework

5

Ed set the table

6

Irfan has put me in charge of

so I set off nice and early.

I put it in writing.

to sell all this kitchen equipment today.

after he accidentally set fire to his shed.

the store while he is on vacation.

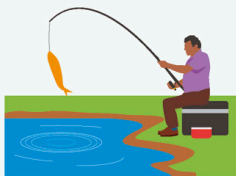
until the last minute.

before his guests arrived for dinner.

# 47 “Go” and “come”

## 47.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH “GO”

Pavel likes to **go fishing** on Saturdays.



Dougie prefers to **go abroad** on vacation.



My kids **go crazy** whenever they hear that song.



My aunt's **going deaf**. You'll have to speak more loudly.



That style of shirt **went out of fashion** years ago!



This fruit has **gone bad**. It's not good to eat. (US)



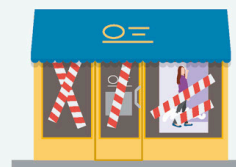
My move **went smoothly**. I had lots of people helping me.



Everyone **went quiet** when the boss walked into the room.



Sara's fashion boutique **went bankrupt**. She couldn't afford the rent.



Joshua's dog has **gone missing**. He's putting up signs around town.





## 47.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "COME"

The traffic **came to a standstill** because of a fallen tree on the road.



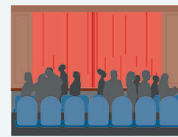
The climbers **came close** to reaching the peak but were too tired to continue.



The judges have **come to a decision** about the winner.



When the play **came to an end**, everyone left the theater.



Paula trained very hard and **came in first** in the hurdles. (US)



Riya **came prepared** for the camping trip.



The team has **come to an agreement** about which logo design to use.



Everyone thought Gabrielle would win the race, but she **came in last**. (US)



We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards **came to the rescue**.



As we walked through the mountains, a ruined castle **came into view**.



## Aa 47.3 WRITE THE WORDS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT VERBS

GO

*bankrupt*

COME

to a standstill   close   ~~bankrupt~~   quiet  
abroad   to a decision   into view   fishing  
deaf   to an agreement   crazy   in last  
prepared   to the rescue   missing   bad

## Aa 47.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



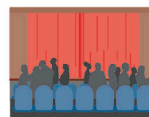
My kids go crazy whenever they hear that song.

1



This fruit has gone bad. It's not good to eat.

2



That style of shirt went out of fashion years ago!

3



Riya came prepared for the camping trip.

4



When the play came to an end, everyone left the theater.



## 47.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A The climbers came close to reaching the peak but were too tired to continue. ☐
- B Everyone thought Gabrielle would win the race, but she came in last. ☒
- C Pavel likes to go fishing on Saturdays. ☐
- D My move went smoothly. I had lots of people helping me. ☐
- E As we walked through the mountains, a ruined castle came into view. ☐
- F The traffic came to a standstill because of a fallen tree on the road. ☐

Aa

## 47.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards ~~went~~ / ~~came~~ to the rescue.

- 1 This fruit has ~~gone~~ / ~~come~~ bad. It's not good to eat.
- 2 My aunt's ~~going~~ / ~~coming~~ deaf. You'll have to speak more loudly.
- 3 The judges have ~~gone~~ / ~~come~~ to a decision about the winner.
- 4 Sara's fashion boutique ~~went~~ / ~~came~~ bankrupt. She couldn't afford the rent.
- 5 Everyone ~~went~~ / ~~came~~ quiet when the boss walked into the room.
- 6 My move ~~went~~ / ~~came~~ smoothly. I had lots of people helping me.
- 7 The team has ~~gone~~ / ~~come~~ to an agreement about which logo design to use.

Aa

## 47.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



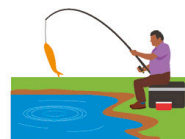
As we walked through the mountains, a ruined castle came into view.



3 Dougie prefers to \_\_\_\_\_ on vacation.



1 Joshua's dog has \_\_\_\_\_.  
He's putting up signs around town.



4 Pavel likes to \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturdays.



2 We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards \_\_\_\_\_.



5 Paula trained very hard and \_\_\_\_\_ in the hurdles.

# 48 Expressions with other verbs

## 48.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "PAY"

I live with my parents, but **pay my way** by buying groceries.

*contribute toward the cost of something*



The children **paid close attention** to John as he told them about his travels.

*listened or watched carefully*



When our CEO retired, Nisha **paid tribute** to her with a wonderful speech.

*publicly praised someone for their achievements*



Kelly **paid me a compliment** and said she liked my new haircut.

*said something nice about me*



Two firefighters **paid a visit** to my son's school today to talk about fire safety.

*visited*



It was so kind of you to lend me that money to get my car fixed. I can **pay you back** now.

*repay a loan*



## 48.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "HOLD"

We **hold a meeting** each Monday to discuss the week ahead.

*have a meeting*



I had to **hold my tongue** when Julian showed me his new suit. It was horrible!

*avoid saying what I really thought*



Mark **holds a grudge** against me because I didn't give him a promotion last year.

*is still angry about something that happened a long time ago*



I'm trying to call the bank and they've asked me to **hold the line**. It's so annoying! (UK)

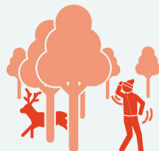
*wait for a telephone conversation to continue*



### 48.3 EXPRESSIONS WITH "CATCH"

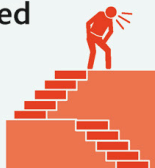
Raul **caught a glimpse of** a deer as he hiked through the forest.

*saw very briefly*



After climbing the stairs, I stopped to **catch my breath**.

*rest after exercise and breathe more slowly*



Don't stand so close to the stove. Your clothes could **catch fire**!

*start to burn*



I must have **caught a cold** from that man who couldn't stop sneezing on the train.

*become sick with a cold*



We need to tell the waiter we're ready to order. Let's try and **catch his eye**.

*get his attention*



Pari usually drives to work, but she **caught the train** this morning.

*traveled by train*



### 48.4 EXPRESSIONS WITH "KEEP"

It's important to **keep your distance** when you drive on busy roads.



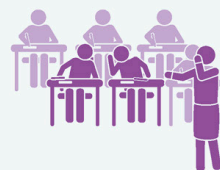
Natalie always **keeps calm** when she has to talk to angry customers.



Cleo told me about her mom's surprise party but asked me to **keep it a secret**.



The teacher asked the students to **keep quiet** during the test.





Aa

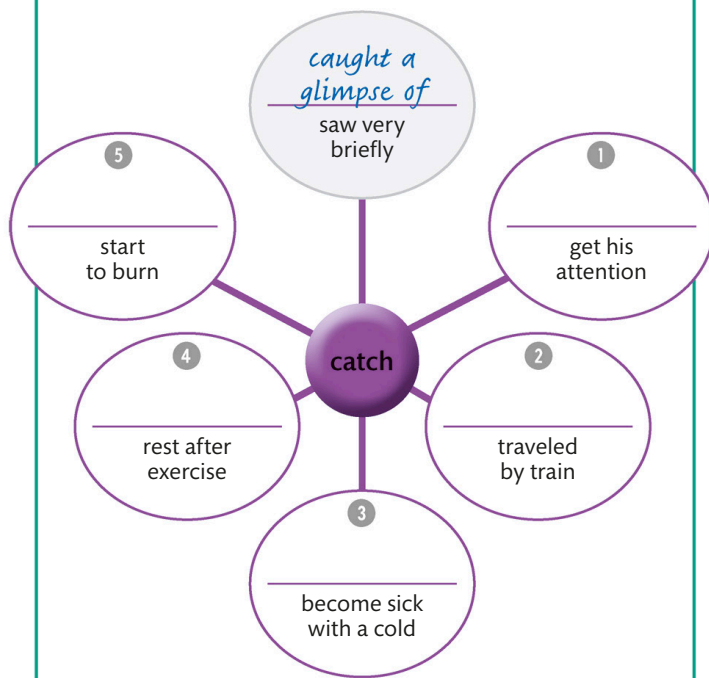
## 48.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Mark ~~pays~~ / **holds** / ~~keeps~~ a grudge against me because I didn't give him a promotion last year.

- 1 Two firefighters **paid** / **held** / **kept** a visit to my son's school today to talk about fire safety.
- 2 I'm trying to call the bank and they've asked me to **hold** / **catch** / **keep** the line. It's so annoying!
- 3 Cleo told me about her mom's surprise party but asked me to **hold** / **catch** / **keep** it a secret.
- 4 We **pay** / **hold** / **keep** a meeting each Monday to discuss the week ahead.

Aa

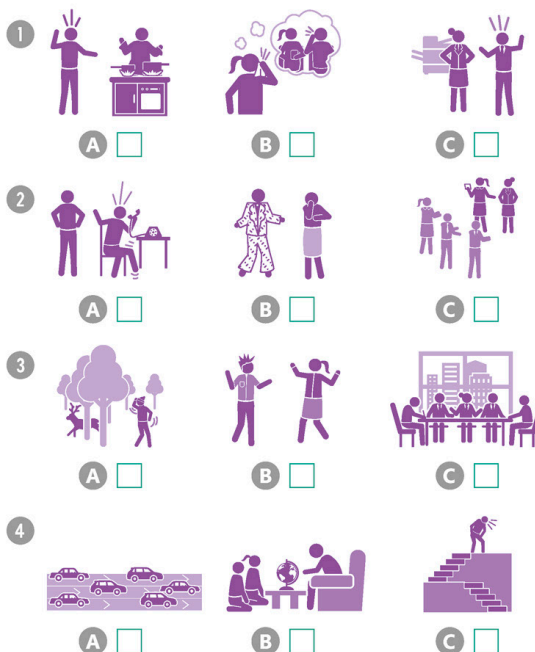
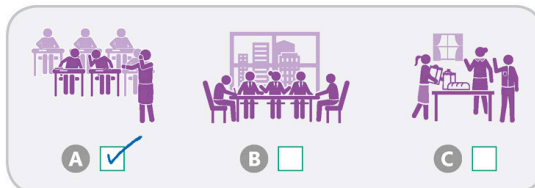
## 48.6 MATCH THE EXPRESSIONS TO THEIR DEFINITIONS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



caught a cold      caught the train  
catch fire      ~~caught a glimpse of~~  
catch his eye      catch my breath



## 48.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



Aa

## 48.8 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| It's important to keep your                 | to keep quiet during the test.           |
| 1 The teacher asked the students            | pay my way by buying groceries.          |
| 2 The children paid close attention to John | distance when you drive on busy roads.   |
| 3 I live with my parents, but               | and said she liked my new haircut.       |
| 4 Natalie always keeps calm                 | as he told them about his travels.       |
| 5 After climbing the stairs,                | but she caught the train this morning.   |
| 6 Pari usually drives to work,              | a deer as he hiked through the forest.   |
| 7 Raul caught a glimpse of                  | I stopped to catch my breath.            |
| 8 Kelly paid me a compliment                | when she has to talk to angry customers. |

Aa

## 48.9 WRITE THE CORRECT EXPRESSION NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

- |  |   |                   |
|--|---|-------------------|
| contribute toward the cost of something                        | = | <u>pay my way</u> |
| 1 repay a loan   | = | _____             |
| 2 publicly praised someone for their achievements              | = | _____             |
| 3 avoid saying what I really thought                           | = | _____             |
| 4 wait for a telephone conversation to continue                | = | _____             |
| 5 said something nice about me                                 | = | _____             |
| 6 is still angry about something that happened a long time ago | = | _____             |
| 7 listened or watched carefully                                | = | _____             |

# 49 Intensifying adverbs

## 49.1 "ABSOLUTELY"

Use "absolutely" to intensify a statement that expresses an opinion.

This food is **absolutely delicious**.  
You're such a good cook!



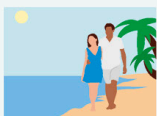
The park is **absolutely beautiful**  
at this time of year.



Xavier's old computer was  
**absolutely useless**. He  
decided to throw it away.



The weather was **absolutely fantastic**  
when we went to Barbados.  
It was sunny every day.



## 49.2 "HIGHLY"

Use "highly" to intensify a statement about probability or praise.

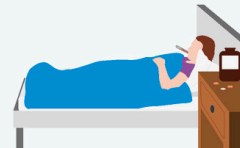
It is **highly probable** that  
Leo is going to lose his job.



I **highly recommend** this book. I stayed  
up all night reading it!



It is **highly unlikely** that  
I'll be well enough to  
go to work tomorrow.



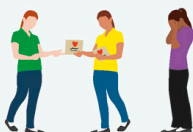
Cesar's new movie was **highly  
praised** by the critics.



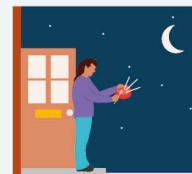
## 49.3 "DEEPLY"

Use "deeply" to intensify a statement about emotions.

I was **deeply hurt** when  
Madison didn't invite me  
to her wedding.



Gina was **deeply concerned**  
when her cat didn't come  
home for his dinner.



#### 49.4 "STRONGLY"

Use "strongly" to intensify advice or a statement about beliefs and values.

We **strongly advise** you not to travel unless it is absolutely necessary.



Malachi **strongly believes** in looking after the environment.



My uncle **strongly feels** that children shouldn't watch too much television.



#### 49.5 "UNBELIEVABLY"

Use "unbelievably" to intensify a statement about extreme or unlikely situations.

I was **unbelievably lucky** to get my violin back after I left it on the train.



Some people can be **unbelievably selfish** when they are on the bus.



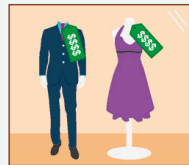
That date was **unbelievably awkward**. We had nothing to say to each other.



#### 49.6 "RIDICULOUSLY"

Use "ridiculously" to intensify criticism or a statement of disbelief.

The clothes in that store are **ridiculously expensive**.



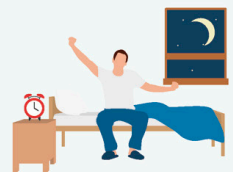
Sadie finished the test early. She thought it was **ridiculously easy**.



The portions in this restaurant are **ridiculously small**.



André gets up **ridiculously early** every morning.





## 49.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



I highly recommend this book. I stayed up all night reading it!

1



André gets up \_\_\_\_\_ every morning.

2



This food is \_\_\_\_\_. You're such a good cook!

3



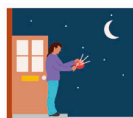
We \_\_\_\_\_ you not to travel unless it is absolutely necessary.

4



That date was \_\_\_\_\_. We had nothing to say to each other.

5



Gina was \_\_\_\_\_ when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.

# Aa

## 49.8 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

The clothes in that store

at this time of year.

1

Cesar's new movie was

didn't invite me to her wedding.

2

The park is absolutely beautiful

are ridiculously expensive.

3

I was deeply hurt when Madison

highly praised by the critics.

4

The portions in this restaurant

looking after the environment.

5

Malachi strongly believes in

are ridiculously small.



Aa

## 49.9 WRITE THE WORDS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT ADVERB

ABSOLUTELY

*delicious*

HIGHLY

RIDICULOUSLY

STRONGLY

unlikely

easy

~~delicious~~

expensive

believes

probable

useless

praised

early

feels

fantastic

advise

Aa

## 49.10 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



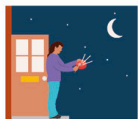
I was ~~highly~~ / ~~deeply~~ / ~~strongly~~ hurt when Madison didn't invite me to her wedding.

1



I was ~~absolutely~~ / ~~strongly~~ / ~~unbelievably~~ lucky to get my violin back after I left it on the train.

2



Gina was ~~deeply~~ / ~~highly~~ / ~~absolutely~~ concerned when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.

3



I ~~highly~~ / ~~ridiculously~~ / ~~deeply~~ recommend this book. I stayed up all night reading it!

4



Some people can be ~~absolutely~~ / ~~unbelievably~~ / ~~strongly~~ selfish when they are on the bus.

5



Malachi ~~strongly~~ / ~~highly~~ / ~~deeply~~ believes in looking after the environment.

# 50 Similes

## 50.1 SIMILES WITH "AS"

Mary's car is **as old as the hills**. She refuses to buy a new one.



My grandmother is **as deaf as a post**. She always turns up the TV really loud.



Andrei went **as white as a sheet** when he saw a spider in his bedroom.



The children were **as good as gold** while they stayed with their grandmother.



Have you been out in the snow? Your hands are **as cold as ice**!



These new high-speed trains are great! They're **as fast as lightning**.



I don't need help carrying my bag. It's **as light as a feather**.

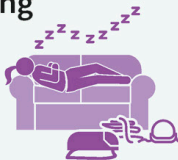


There was no rain for months, and the land was **as dry as a bone**.



## 50.3 SIMILES WITH "LIKE"

Selma **slept like a log** after a long day climbing in the Alps.



Roy's new suit **fits like a glove**. He looks really good.



## 50.2 SIMILES USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

Paul is **as quiet as a mouse**.  
He never talks in meetings.



Naomi was **as brave as a lion** and confronted the school bully in the playground.



I'm recovering from the flu, and I still feel **as weak as a kitten**.



My grandfather is **as wise as an owl**.  
He always gives good advice.



Javier was **as busy as a bee** getting ready for the party.



I'm **as blind as a bat** without my glasses.



Fiona looked **as proud as a peacock** in her new hat.



My uncle is **as strong as an ox**.  
He's a champion weightlifter.



I was **shaking like a leaf** before I went into the cave.



We had to **run like the wind** to catch that bus!



## 50.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



We had to run like the ~~fire~~ / ~~water~~ / **wind** to catch that bus!

1



I don't need help carrying my bag. It's as light as a **bird** / ~~mouse~~ / ~~feather~~.

2



My uncle is as strong as an ~~eagle~~ / ~~ox~~ / **elephant**. He's a champion weightlifter.

3



My grandfather is as **wise** / ~~clever~~ / **bright** as an owl. He always gives good advice.

4



I'm as blind as a **mole** / ~~bat~~ / ~~worm~~ without my glasses.

5



Paul is as quiet as a **mouse** / ~~sheep~~ / ~~fish~~. He never talks in meetings.

## 50.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

a weak as kitten as

I'm recovering from the flu, and I still feel as weak as a kitten.

bone as dry a as

1 There was no rain for months, and the land was \_\_\_\_\_.

a as peacock as proud

2 Fiona looked \_\_\_\_\_ in her new hat.

hills old as the as

3 Mary's car is \_\_\_\_\_. She refuses to buy a new one.

like log a slept

4 Selma \_\_\_\_\_ after a long day climbing in the Alps.

Aa

### 50.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SIMILES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |           |              |
|---|-----------|--------------|
|   | as strong | as gold      |
| 1 | as good   | as a post    |
| 2 | as deaf   | as an ox     |
| 3 | shaking   | as lightning |
| 4 | as white  | like a leaf  |
| 5 | as fast   | as a lion    |
| 6 | as brave  | as a sheet   |

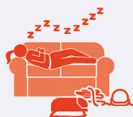


### 50.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE SIMILES YOU HEAR

- |   |                       |                                     |
|---|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A | as proud as a peacock | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| B | as light as a feather | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| C | as weak as a kitten   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| D | as cold as ice        | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| E | as wise as an owl     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| F | as blind as a bat     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| G | as white as a sheet   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| H | run like the wind     | <input type="checkbox"/>            |
| I | as quiet as a mouse   | <input type="checkbox"/>            |

Aa

### 50.8 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING SIMILES



Selma slept like a log after a long day climbing in the Alps.



- 1 Have you been out in the snow? Your hands are \_\_\_\_\_ !



- 2 Mary's car is \_\_\_\_\_. She refuses to buy a new one.



- 3 Javier was \_\_\_\_\_ getting ready for the party.



- 4 Roy's new suit \_\_\_\_\_. He looks really good.



- 5 My grandmother is \_\_\_\_\_. She always turns up the TV really loud.



# 51 Proverbs

## 51.1 COMMON ENGLISH PROVERBS

**Don't go into that spooky house!**  
**Curiosity killed the cat.**

*Being too curious can get you into trouble.*



**Azra adores her pet snake. I suppose**  
**beauty is in the eye of the beholder.**

*everyone has their own idea of what is beautiful*



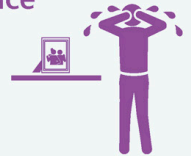
**I can't follow directions unless I**  
**have a map. A picture is worth**  
**a thousand words.**

*It is easier to show something in a picture than to describe it using words.*



**Jakob really misses his girlfriend now that**  
**she has gone to college. Absence**  
**makes the heart grow fonder.**

*Being away from someone you love makes you love them more.*



**Don't just say you're going to clean your**  
**room, do it! Actions speak louder**  
**than words.**

*What you do matters more than what you say.*



**I was so pleased when I finally managed to**  
**sell my house for a good price. All good**  
**things come to those who wait.**

*If you wait for something good, you will eventually get it.*



**You were meant to give me this**  
**assignment a week ago, but better**  
**late than never.**

*it's better for something to happen late than not to happen at all*



**Flo's incompetence at work is affecting the**  
**whole team. A chain is only as strong**  
**as its weakest link.**

*A team is only as strong as its weakest member.*



**Don't count your chickens before**  
**they hatch, Kim! The game isn't**  
**over yet.**

*don't assume that something will happen before the outcome is certain*



**Stop sitting by the phone waiting to hear**  
**if you got the job. A watched pot**  
**never boils.**

*Time will pass more quickly if you keep busy while you're waiting for something.*



Stop complaining about your toothache and call the dentist. **There's no time like the present.**

*It's better to do things now than wait.*



I asked Sofia to help me write this difficult report. **Two heads are better than one.**

*It's helpful to have the advice of a second person.*



I'm so glad I told Amira I was stressed at work. **A problem shared is a problem halved.**

*If you tell someone about a problem, you'll feel better.*



The day the sales began, Tamsin was outside the store at 6 in the morning. **The early bird catches the worm.**

*The person who arrives early or acts quickly will get what they want.*



Logan said the shelf fell down because his drill was broken, but **a bad workman always blames his tools.**

*people who are bad at something blame the equipment they use*



I've been playing the trumpet every day and I'm really improving. **Practice makes perfect.**

*Practicing something will make you very good at it.*



I told Sam about a great job, but he didn't apply. **You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink.**

*You can make something easier for someone, but you can't force them to do it.*



We're almost ready for the party and we've still got plenty of time. **Many hands make light work.**

*Things get done quickly when lots of people help.*



I know he looks a bit scary, but my dog's really gentle. **You can't judge a book by its cover.**

*You shouldn't make judgments based on appearance.*



I think you should tell Carlo that it was you who broke his skateboard. **Honesty is the best policy.**

*It's always better to tell the truth.*



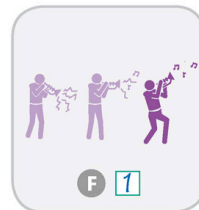
Aa

## 51.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE PROVERBS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |                  |                    |
|---|------------------|--------------------|
|   | The early bird   | better than one.   |
| 1 | Honesty is       | make light work.   |
| 2 | Many hands       | catches the worm.  |
| 3 | There's no time  | the best policy.   |
| 4 | Two heads are    | than never.        |
| 5 | Curiosity killed | like the present.  |
| 6 | Better late      | louder than words. |
| 7 | Actions speak    | the cat.           |



## 51.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☒G ☐H ☐I ☐

Aa

## 51.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Don't just say you're going to clean your room, do it! **Actions talk louder than words.**

Don't just say you're going to clean your room, do it! Actions speak louder than words.

- 1 **Don't count your geese before they hatch**, Kim! The game isn't over yet.

---

- 2 Stop sitting by the phone waiting to hear if you got the job. **A watched kettle never boils.**

---

- 3 I've been playing the trumpet every day and I'm really improving. **Practice becomes perfect.**

---

- 4 Azra adores her pet snake. I suppose **beauty is in the eye of the owner.**

---

Aa

## 51.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Flo's incompetence at work is affecting the whole team. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link.

1



I asked Sofia to help me write this difficult report. Two heads are better than one.

2



Jakob really misses his girlfriend now that she has gone to college. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

3



We're almost ready for the party and we've still got plenty of time. Many hands make light work.

4



You were meant to give me this assignment a week ago, but better late than never.

5



The day the sales began, Tamsin was outside the store at 6 in the morning. The early bird catches the worm!

Aa

## 51.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PROVERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

Things get done quickly when lots of people help.

= Many hands make light work.

1 It's better to do things now than wait.

= \_\_\_\_\_

2 It's always better to tell the truth.

= \_\_\_\_\_

3 Being too curious can get you into trouble.

= \_\_\_\_\_

4 What you do matters more than what you say.

= \_\_\_\_\_

## 52.1 "LOOK AT," "SEE," AND "WATCH"

Use "look at" to talk about paying attention to something or someone.

Come outside and **look at** the flowers I planted last month.



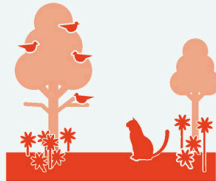
Use "see" to talk about noticing something.

I **saw** Keiko's large ginger cat lying on the lawn.



Use "watch" to talk about observing something over a period of time.

The cat **watched** the birds sitting in a tree.



## 52.2 "WAIT," "EXPECT," AND "LOOK FORWARD TO"

Use "wait" to talk about staying in the same place before something happens.

I'm going to a party tonight. I've been **waiting** for the bus for 10 minutes.



Use "expect" to talk about what people think will happen in the future.

I **expect** that there will be lots of people at the party.



Use "look forward to" to talk about feeling excited about a future event.

I'm really **looking forward to** seeing the fireworks display at the party.



## 52.3 "LISTEN TO" AND "HEAR"

Use "listen to" to talk about paying attention over a period of time to a sound.

Jules often **listens to** music on his walk home from work.



Use "hear" to talk about suddenly noticing a sound.

Suddenly, Jules **heard** a loud bang coming from behind him.





## 52.4 "WIN" AND "BEAT"

Use "win" to talk about achieving or gaining something.

The Lions have **won** the soccer championship again.



Use "beat" to talk about a victory over an opponent.

The Lions **beat** the Stars 3-1.



## 52.5 "BORROW" AND "LEND"

Use "borrow" to talk about receiving something for a short time.

My laptop's broken and I have to apply for a job tonight. Could I **borrow** yours, please?



Use "lend" to talk about giving something to someone else for a short time.

Yes, I will **lend** you my laptop, but please be careful with it.



## 52.6 "WISH" AND "HOPE"

Use "wish" to talk about situations that you would like to happen but are impossible.

I **wish** my test results were better.



Use "hope" to talk about situations that are still possible in the future.

I **hope** I still get into college.



## 52.7 "SMELL" AND "FEEL"

Use "smell" to talk about the scent or odor of something.

This pie that you've been baking **smells** delicious!



Use "feel" to talk about experiencing a sensation or emotion.

It's making me **feel** hungry.



## 52.8 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



The Lions have **won** / ~~beaten~~ the soccer championship again.



1 Yes, I will **borrow** / **lend** you my laptop, but please be careful with it.



2 I **wait** / **expect** that there will be lots of people at the party.



3 I **wish** / **hope** I still get into college.



4 Suddenly, Jules **listened to** / **heard** a loud bang coming from behind him.



5 This pie that you've been baking **smells** / **feels** delicious!

## 52.9 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

I'm really looking forward to seeing the fireworks display at the party.

1 Jules often \_\_\_\_\_ music on his walk home from work.

2 Come outside and \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers I planted last month.

3 The Lions have \_\_\_\_\_ the soccer championship again.

4 The Lions \_\_\_\_\_ the Stars 3-1.

5 I \_\_\_\_\_ Keiko's large ginger cat lying on the lawn.

won

listens to

saw

look at

~~looking forward to~~

beat

Aa

## 52.10 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Yes, I will lend you my laptop,

1 The cat watched the birds

2 I wish my

3 This pie that you've been baking

4 Suddenly, Jules heard a loud bang

5 I expect that there will be

6 Come outside and look at

7 The Lions have won

8 I'm really looking forward to

9 Jules often listens to

test results were better.

lots of people at the party.

but please be careful with it.

the flowers I planted last month.

sitting in a tree.

coming from behind him.

smells delicious!

seeing the fireworks display at the party.

music on his walk home from work.

the soccer championship again.



## 52.11 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C ☒ 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

**53.1** "DAMAGE," "INJURE," AND "HURT"

Use "damage" to talk about causing harm to an object or thing.

Colm **damaged** Sheila's vase when he dropped it.



Use "injure" (or "hurt") to talk about causing harm or pain to a person or a part of the body.

Colm **injured** his foot when he dropped the vase.



Use "hurt" to talk about feeling pain. You can't use "injure" to talk about feeling pain.

Colm's foot still **hurt** for days after the accident.

**53.2** "LOAD," "FILL UP," AND "CHARGE"

Use "load" to talk about putting objects into something, usually a vehicle.

Can you help me **load** the car with everything we need for the beach?



Use "fill up" or "fill" to talk about putting something, usually a liquid, into a container.

Don't forget to bring water. I'll **fill up** some bottles for us.



Use "charge" to talk about giving a battery-operated device electricity that can be stored.

Wait a minute! I need to **charge** my phone before we go.

**53.3** "SAY" AND "TELL"

When you use "say," you don't have to state who a person is talking to.

"Oh, no," **said** Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."



When you use "tell," you must state who a person is talking to.

Kayleigh had to **tell** her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.



### 53.4 "WEAR" AND "CARRY"

Use "wear" to talk about having clothing on your body.

Nina **wore** her new dress to Jack's party.



Use "carry" to talk about bringing an object from one place to another.

Arnold **carried** Jack's birthday cake into the dining room.



### 53.5 "REMIND" AND "REMEMBER"

Use "remind" to talk about making someone remember something.

Silvia **reminded** Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday.



Use "remember" to talk about keeping something in your mind.

Sanjay **remembered** to visit his mother, who was delighted to see him.



### 53.6 "SENSIBLE" AND "SENSITIVE"

Use "sensible" to describe a person or a course of action that shows good judgment.

Are you sure you want to buy that car? It would be more **sensible** to save your money.



Use "sensitive" to describe a person who feels emotions strongly and easily gets upset.

There's no need to be so **sensitive**! I was only trying to give you advice.



### 53.7 "JOB" AND "WORK"

Use "job" to describe the specific role someone has in a workplace.

I have a **job** as a sales assistant in a supermarket.



Use "work" to talk about the activities that someone carries out in a workplace.

There is lots of **work** to do. I have to stack shelves and serve customers.





Aa

## 53.8 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



"Oh, no," said Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."

1



Sanjay remembered to visit his mother, who was delighted to see him.

2



There is lots of work to do. I have to stack shelves and serve customers.

3



Are you sure you want to buy that car? It would be more sensible to save your money.

4



Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase.

Aa

## 53.9 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Kayleigh had to say her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.

☐

Kayleigh had to tell her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.

☒

1

Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident.

☐

Colm's foot still injured for days after the accident.

☐

2

Wait a minute! I need to load my phone before we go.

☐

Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go.

☐

3

Silvia remembered Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday.

☐

Silvia reminded Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday.

☐

4

I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket.

☐

I have a work as a sales assistant in a supermarket.

☐



### 53.10 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A Don't forget to bring water. I'll fill up some bottles for us. ☐
- B Arnold carried Jack's birthday cake into the dining room. ☐
- C Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase. ☐
- D Can you help me load the car with everything we need for the beach? ☐
- E Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident. ☐
- F Colm damaged Sheila's vase when he dropped it. ☐
- G Nina wore her new dress to Jack's party. ☒
- H Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go. ☐

### Aa

### 53.11 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I have a **work** as a sales assistant in a supermarket.

I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket.



- 1 There's no need to be so **sensible**! I was only trying to give you advice.



- 2 Kayleigh had to **say** her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.



- 3 Colm **injured** Sheila's vase when he dropped it.



- 4 Sanjay **reminded** to visit his mother, who was delighted to see him.



- 5 Nina **carried** her new dress to Jack's party.



- 6 Don't forget to bring water. I'll **load** some bottles for us.



# 54 Colors

## 54.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT COLORS

The party was **a black-tie event** and everyone was really well dressed.

*an event for which people have to dress very formally*



Paula has **a green thumb**. She has so many beautiful plants in her house. (US)

*a talent for gardening*



The day I received my degree was **a red-letter day** for me.

*an important or happy day*



The actress made her first appearance **on the silver screen** in the 1950s.

*in a movie*



Sergio got **a black eye** after he walked into a lamppost.

*a bruise around the eye*



Layla was **green with envy** when her brother won the lottery.

*very jealous*



Alyssa knocked on my door **out of the blue** yesterday. I hadn't seen her for years!

*unexpectedly*



We're protesting against plans to build houses on **the green belt** in our local area.

*fields or parks around a town or city*



I hate the winter! It's only 4 o'clock and it's already **pitch black** outside.

*very dark*



It's my birthday, so I'm going to **paint the town red** with my friends tonight.

*go out and celebrate enthusiastically*



Fake designer goods are sold on **the black market**.

*the illegal buying and selling of goods*



I thought my new boss was really nice, but he **showed his true colors** when I forgot to put sugar in his coffee.

*showed his real character and feelings*



Ela **turned beet-red** when I caught her copying my homework. (US)

*blushed, was very embarrassed*



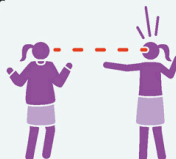
Larry was **black and blue** after falling down the stairs.

*badly bruised*



Jo **saw red** when she found her sister wearing her sweater.

*became angry*



Francis only cleans his house **once in a blue moon**.

*very rarely*



There's **a gray area** in the office dress code. My boss said it was casual, but she told me I couldn't wear shorts.

*a situation where the rules are unclear*



I want to be a teacher, so getting work experience at the school was **a golden opportunity** for me.

*a good chance to do something rewarding or get something valuable*



The boys were **caught red-handed** when they tried to break into the house.

*caught doing something wrong*



I always **get the blues** when my vacation is over and I have to go back to work.

*feel sad*





## 54.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- a black eye ☒ saw red ☐ a gray area ☐
- ① a red-letter day ☐ paint the town red ☐ saw red ☐
- ② black and blue ☐ out of the blue ☐ pitch black ☐
- ③ a gray area ☐ a green thumb ☐ the green belt ☐
- ④ black and blue ☐ a black eye ☐ out of the blue ☐
- ⑤ turned beet-red ☐ saw red ☐ caught red-handed ☐
- ⑥ a black-tie event ☐ black and blue ☐ pitch black ☐
- ⑦ green with envy ☐ a green thumb ☐ the green belt ☐

Aa

## 54.3 READ THE LETTER AND CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS

Hi Sandra,  
Alyssa knocked on my door out of the ~~blue~~ / ~~green~~ yesterday. I hadn't seen her for years! She said she was going to paint the town ~~gold~~ / ~~red~~ for her birthday next week, and invited me along, too. You know I only go out once in a ~~white~~ / ~~blue~~ moon, so I thought it would be a ~~silver~~ / ~~golden~~ opportunity to meet some new friends. She said I could bring a friend along. Would you like to come with me?

Love,  
Janice

Aa

## 54.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Francis only cleans his house **once in a pink moon**.

*Francis only cleans his house once in a blue moon.*



- ① Sergio got a **blue eye** after he walked into a lamppost.



- ② The actress made her first appearance **on the golden screen** in the 1950s.



- ③ I always **get the grays** when my vacation is over and I have to go back to work.



- ④ The boys were **caught blue-handed** when they tried to break into the house.





Aa

## 54.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



There's a gray area in the office dress code. My boss said it was casual, but she told me I couldn't wear shorts.

1



It's my birthday, so I'm going to paint the town red with my friends tonight.

2



I thought my new boss was really nice, but he showed his true colors when I forgot to put sugar in his coffee.

3



I want to be a teacher, so getting work experience at the school was a golden opportunity for me.

4



We're protesting against plans to build houses on the green belt in our local area.

5



Fake designer goods are sold on the black market.

Aa

## 54.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

an important or happy day

= a r e d - l e t t e r d a y

1 badly bruised

= b \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_ b \_ \_ \_

2 became angry

= s \_ \_ \_ r \_ \_

3 a talent for gardening

= a g \_ \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_ \_ \_

4 very jealous

= g \_ \_ \_ \_ w \_ \_ \_ e \_ \_ \_

5 unexpectedly

= o \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_ t \_ \_ b \_ \_ \_

# Answers

## 01

### 1.3

YOUNG:

**bright young things**  
**tender age**  
**knee-high to a grasshopper**

OLD:

**no spring chicken**  
**over the hill**  
**great age**

### 1.4

- 1 Becky's worried she's **getting on in years** after spotting more gray hairs.
- 2 Damien's at **that awkward age** and finds it hard to talk to people.
- 3 My grandpa got married again at the **ripe old age** of 92.
- 4 This TV show **bridges the generation gap**. The whole family loves it.
- 5 I **feel my age** when I go shopping with my children.

### 1.5

- 1 I'm too **long in the tooth** to try out skydiving.
- 2 My assistant is a bit **wet behind the ears**. He still has a lot to learn.
- 3 Derek and Joan spent their **twilight years** traveling the world.
- 4 In many countries, there is a big celebration when young people **come of age**.
- 5 Angela might be 84, but she is still **young at heart**.
- 6 Sanjay feels **as old as the hills** when his kids talk about technology.

### 1.6

- 1 improve with age
- 2 over the hill
- 3 great age
- 4 twilight years
- 5 young at heart
- 6 tender age

## 02

### 2.3

- 1 a family heirloom
- 2 a fair-weather friend
- 3 losing touch with
- 4 a soulmate
- 5 drifted apart
- 6 extended family

### 2.4

A 6 B 4 C 1 D 7 E 2 F 8 G 5 H 3

### 2.5

- 1 We're moving to a bigger house because we're hoping to **start** a family soon.
- 2 My wife and I **hit** it off immediately when we first met at a country music concert.
- 3 Uncle Tony is the black **sheep** of the family. He's been to prison three times.
- 4 Cy and I got off on the wrong **foot** on our date. He was an hour late and forgot my name.
- 5 Ramón and Tara get on like a **house** on fire. They're always talking and laughing.

### 2.6

- 1 We're **bringing up** our children to be kind to animals.
- 2 Marie and Pierre met through Isaac, a **mutual friend** of theirs.
- 3 Curly hair **runs in our family**, and my daughter, mom, and I all have it.
- 4 I've **kept in touch with** Lin since we left college 25 years ago.
- 5 Jade is a **family friend**. She grew up on the same street as us.

## 03

### 3.4

- 1 My aunt is a well-respected person.
- 2 Philip has always been wealthy.
- 3 Bob is from the wrong social background.
- 4 Clara looked extremely glamorous.
- 5 She is descended from important people.

### 3.5

- 1 Edie **looks like butter wouldn't melt in her mouth**, but she's actually really naughty.
- 2 Oscar is only 25, but he's already **getting thin on top**.
- 3 My aunt believed in **keeping up appearances** despite having little money.
- 4 Nalini **never has a hair out of place**. She cares a lot about her appearance.
- 5 Milan returned home with **five o'clock shadow** after a long day at the office.

### 3.6

- 1 Domenica **looked the part** for her first day of work at the bank.
- 2 Clara **looked like a million bucks** when she arrived for her wedding.
- 3 Mateo and his brother Lucas are **like two peas in a pod**. I can't tell them apart.
- 4 Karen is **the spitting image of** that actor in the new sci-fi film.
- 5 Rita **looked like she'd seen a ghost** after I told her my news.
- 6 Rachel **looked like a drowned rat** after she got caught in the rain on her way home.

### 3.7

- 1 all skin and bones
- 2 the spitting image of
- 3 getting thin on top
- 4 five o'clock shadow
- 5 a highflier

## 04

### 4.4

- 1 It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a barrel of laughs.
- 2 Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score.
- 3 Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bark is worse than her bite.
- 4 Jim's a good egg. He helped me to move last week.
- 5 Gustav has a selfish streak. He won't share his cookies with his friends.
- 6 Debbie's a tough cookie. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work.

### 4.5

A 4 B 6 C 2 D 1 E 8 F 3 G 5 H 7

### 4.6

- 1 Noah is really down to earth. He earns lots of money, but he lives in a little cottage.
- 2 My dad's just an average Joe. He enjoys burgers and fries, and he loves watching baseball.
- 3 Tony wouldn't say boo to a goose. He gets really shy when he talks to customers.
- 4 Norah is such a fuddy-duddy. She never wants to come out with us on Saturday night.
- 5 Arturo is so two-faced. He said he liked my haircut but told his friends he hated it.

### 4.7

- 1 Her bark is worse than her bite.
- 2 as cool as a cucumber
- 3 as bold as brass
- 4 a barrel of laughs
- 5 wouldn't hurt a fly

## 05

### 5.2

- 1 My kids think this TV show is **the best thing since sliced bread**.
- 2 We had a wonderful boat trip. **The icing on the cake** was seeing some dolphins.
- 3 Chan's store only sells watches that are **top of the line**.
- 4 **The crème de la crème** of the fashion world were at the launch party.

### 5.3

A 2 B 6 C 1 D 5 E 4 F 3

## 5.4

- 1 out of this world
- 2 the best of both worlds
- 3 second to none
- 4 stole the show
- 5 the crème de la crème
- 6 the bee's knees
- 7 a blessing in disguise

## 5.5

- 1 highest quality
- 2 the best part of a good experience
- 3 excellent reviews
- 4 really likes or admires
- 5 that she has fantasized about having

## 5.6

- 1 **World-class** athletes need to train for a few hours every day.
- 2 Marcelo **stole the show** with his amazing singing.
- 3 **The crème de la crème** of the fashion world were at the launch party.
- 4 Walking to work gives me **the best of both worlds**. It helps me save money and get fit.
- 5 The burgers in Max's diner are **to die for**. And they're huge!

## 06

## 6.2

- 1 cheap and nasty
- 2 like watching paint dry
- 3 past its sell-by date
- 4 a fate worse than death
- 5 not my cup of tea
- 6 rough around the edges

## 6.3

- 1 The museum in my town is nothing to **write** home about. There are very few exhibits.
- 2 The weather in Hawaii didn't **live** up to expectations. It rained every day.
- 3 Rita's TV is on its last **legs**. She's had it for over 10 years.
- 4 The clothes in this store are second **rate**. They don't last very long.
- 5 Pete's habit of dropping litter leaves a bad **taste** in my mouth.

## 6.4

- 1 I told my roommate to move out. **The last straw** was when she broke my favorite mug.
- 2 Sales **fell short of expectations** last month. We need to do better this month.
- 3 I know everyone else loves it, but this book is **not all that it's cracked up to be**.
- 4 I'm afraid this product just **isn't up to scratch**, Kyle.
- 5 His voice is OK, but he's **not going to set the world on fire**.

## 6.5

- 1 moth-eaten
- 2 a let-down
- 3 past its prime
- 4 second rate
- 5 cheap and nasty

## 07

## 7.2

- A 6 B 3 C 5 D 2 E 1 F 4

## 7.3

- 1 It really gets my goat when someone eats smelly food on the train.
- 2 You're barking up the wrong tree if you think I can help you with your homework. I'm terrible at science.
- 3 Rachel always gets on her high horse about being a vegetarian. It's so annoying!
- 4 Bill looked like the cat that got the cream when he won the competition.
- 5 Our falling profits are the elephant in the room at every team meeting.

## 7.4

- 1 I tried to fix the photocopier, but I've really made a **pig's** ear of it.
- 2 My colleagues all have terrible colds. They're **dropping** like flies!
- 3 Ruby is a one-trick **pony**. She's a great singer, but she can't dance or act.
- 4 I **chickened** out of diving off the top board in the pool. It was too high!
- 5 Clarita's new apartment is tiny. There's not enough room to swing a **cat**.

## 7.5

- 1 gets my goat
- 2 not enough room to swing a cat
- 3 a bird's-eye view
- 4 a scaredy-cat
- 5 The world is your oyster.
- 6 like a deer in headlights

## 08

## 8.2

- 1 We're usually packed like sardines **on the bus to work in the morning**.
- 2 My granddaughter is the apple of my eye. I'm **so proud of her**.
- 3 We thought our walk would be really hilly, **but the land was as flat as a pancake**.
- 4 I felt warm and toasty **sitting in front of the fire**.
- 5 I don't like my job, **but it puts food on the table**.
- 6 You have to walk on eggshells around Dylan. **He gets upset so easily**.

## 8.3

- 1 I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the cake!
- 2 I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could chew when I took this promotion.
- 3 Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just sour grapes.
- 4 Asher is such a butterfingers. He is always dropping things.
- 5 Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotcakes after it got great reviews.

## 8.4

- 1 B 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 A

## 8.5

- 1 eat humble pie
- 2 a couch potato
- 3 spoon-feeds
- 4 walk on eggshells
- 5 sugarcoat

## 09

## 9.4

- 1 My neighbor and I have **buried the hatchet** after arguing about the parking.
- 2 The negotiating teams stayed up all night **hammering out a deal**.
- 3 The government has **given the green light** to the construction of a new train station.
- 4 My girlfriend and I have **agreed to disagree** about what to do on vacation.

## 9.5

- A 7 B 1 C 9 D 3 E 6 F 2 G 4  
H 5 I 8

## 9.6

Hi Fiona,  
How are you? I had some problems at work recently. My boss and I are usually on the same **page** about work, but we were at **odds** about my hours. She jumped down my **throat** when I said I couldn't work this weekend. We found the **middle** ground when I agreed to stay late on Friday.  
See you soon,  
Pablo

## 9.7

- 1 Diana and I reached a compromise about what movie to watch tonight.
- 2 Fran's dad gave her the thumbs-up to go out with her friends.
- 3 I tried to smooth things over between Pari and Toni after their argument.
- 4 Lenka and I fought like cats and dogs when we were children.
- 5 Samira has been given the go-ahead to play tennis after her injury.

## 9.8

- 1 held out an olive branch
- 2 on the same page
- 3 at odds
- 4 struck a deal
- 5 gave her the thumbs-up

## 10

### 10.5

- 1 Yoshiko offered a sympathetic ear when my cat went missing.
- 2 Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my leg.
- 3 I was on my best behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents.
- 4 Pedro quit his job at the store, leaving me in the lurch.
- 5 Jean behaved out of character at the office party. She's normally so quiet!
- 6 Paulina poked fun at Mirek's new hairstyle.

### 10.6

GOOD BEHAVIOR:  
**generous to a fault**  
**behaved beautifully**  
**big hearted**  
**lend a hand**

BAD BEHAVIOR:  
**below the belt**  
**treats them like dirt**  
**let us down**  
**unacceptable behavior**

### 10.7

- A 4 B 2 C 5 D 1 E 3

### 10.8

- 1 Henry can't control his **badly behaved** students.
- 2 I really **feel for** Mario. He has to work so hard in the kitchen.
- 3 My friends **ribbed me** for having such an old phone.
- 4 My dog **behaved beautifully** when I took him on the train.
- 5 Brad loves **playing practical jokes** on his brother.

## 11

### 11.4

- 1 I get **itchy feet** when I haven't been abroad for a long time.
- 2 Liz was **feeling blue** when her best friend left the country.
- 3 When Dylan copied her homework, Zoe was so angry that she was **foaming at the mouth**.

- 4 This terrible weather is **driving me nuts**.
- 5 My neighbor **saw red** when I parked in front of his house.

### 11.5

- A 7 B 1 C 4 D 8 E 2 F 5 G 3 H 6

### 11.6

- 1 I was broken-hearted **when my girlfriend left me**.
- 2 I get itchy feet when I haven't **been abroad for a long time**.
- 3 Caitlin got cold feet **about singing karaoke**.
- 4 The children all went bananas **when I took them to the playground**.
- 5 My neighbor saw red **when I parked in front of his house**.

### 11.7

- 1 I **had egg on my face** after I called Jo's new boyfriend Ben. That was her ex-boyfriend's name!
- 2 After a long week at work, I **let my hair down** at my best friend's party.
- 3 Silvio went **as white as a sheet** when he got the bad news.
- 4 I was really upset when a customer shouted at me, but I managed to **keep a stiff upper lip**.
- 5 Leo **cried his eyes out** when I said he couldn't have another cookie.

## 12

### 12.5

- 1 The news that our profits were up was **music** to our ears.
- 2 Our new intern is such an **eager** beaver. She works really hard.
- 3 I was over the **moon** when I won the best actor award.
- 4 Salvador loves cooking. He puts his **heart** and soul into it.
- 5 I was on the edge of my **seat** as the detective revealed the murderer.

### 12.6

- 1 The kids **jumped for joy** when I brought our new puppy home.
- 2 Robbie has **flung himself into** training for the gymnastics competition.
- 3 My motorcycle is **my pride and joy**. I clean it every day.
- 4 Jamal **had butterflies in his stomach** as he waited for his date outside the restaurant.
- 5 Clara was **bright-eyed and bushy-tailed** as she set off on the hike.

### 12.7

- 1 The children were **bouncing off the walls** after a whole day indoors.
- 2 The news that our profits were up was **music to our ears**.

- 3 Jack was **on top of the world** when his team won the trophy.
- 4 I was **on the edge of my seat** as the detective revealed the murderer.
- 5 The sight of the park in spring is **a joy to behold**.

### 12.8

- 1 bursting with excitement
- 2 on cloud nine
- 3 head over heels
- 4 wept with joy
- 5 raring to go

## 13

### 13.5

- 1 Yannis was sad.
- 2 I was embarrassed.
- 3 I was sad.
- 4 I was afraid.
- 5 They were ashamed.

### 13.6

- 1 B 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 A

### 13.7

- 1 It makes my blood boil when people litter.
- 2 The sight of the old, spooky house made my hair stand on end.
- 3 Alice was shaking in her boots before she did her first bungee jump.
- 4 That horror movie sent shivers down my spine. It was so scary!

### 13.8

- 1 a downer
- 2 on the warpath
- 3 reduced to tears
- 4 that sinking feeling
- 5 wanted the earth to swallow her up
- 6 kicked myself

## 14

### 14.2

- 1 That boring lecture **went in one ear and out the other!**
- 2 I've seen that animal before, but **its name escapes me**.
- 3 Emi and Sofia **took a trip down memory lane** as they talked about their school days.
- 4 Jacob was explaining the diagram when he suddenly **lost his train of thought**.

### 14.3

- 1 You should keep in **mind** that it gets cold in the winter and pack some warm clothes.
- 2 The police showed me a photo of the suspect to jog my **memory**.



- ③ I enjoyed the party, but at the back of my **mind** I knew I had to catch the last train home.  
 ④ Keeping busy at work is helping me erase the **memory** of my ex-girlfriend.

## 14.4

- ① When the hotel receptionist asked me for my phone number, **my mind went blank**.  
 ② The answer to the teacher's question was **on the tip of my tongue**.  
 ③ I'm sorry I didn't get you a present. **It slipped my mind** that it was your birthday.  
 ④ I can't believe I forgot to bring the sandwiches! I've got a **memory like a sieve**.  
 ⑤ **Memories are fading** of what the world was like before TV.

## 14.5

- ① a photographic memory  
 ② memories came flooding back  
 ③ racking my brain  
 ④ rings a bell  
 ⑤ erase the memory of  
 ⑥ stirred up memories  
 ⑦ in living memory  
 ⑧ sprang to mind

# 15

## 15.2

- ① burying his head in the sand  
 ② a bundle of nerves  
 ③ getting on my nerves  
 ④ Keep your chin up!  
 ⑤ a shoulder to cry on  
 ⑥ a pat on the back  
 ⑦ has his heart set on

## 15.3

- A 9 B 4 C 5 D 1 E 3 F 2 G 8  
 H 6 I 7

## 15.4

- ① I hope the performance goes well, Adam. Break a leg!  
 ② Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterbrain!  
 ③ Isla has such a sweet tooth. She loves eating cakes.  
 ④ Wyatt is a good friend. He was a shoulder to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend.

## 15.5

- ① play it by ear  
 ② my heart sank  
 ③ almost jumped out of his skin  
 ④ has his heart set on  
 ⑤ thick-skinned

## 15.6

- ① Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterbrain!

- ② When you're a parent, you need to **have eyes in the back of your head**!  
 ③ Scarlett **got cold feet** about going on the rollercoaster.  
 ④ There's nothing to do at work at the moment. I'm just sitting here **twiddling my thumbs**.  
 ⑤ Maureen was a **bundle of nerves** before her wedding.

# 16

## 16.2

- ① They were so angry with each other **that they almost came to blows**!  
 ② I decided to hold fire before **booking such an expensive holiday**.  
 ③ The boss is in a terrible mood today! **We're all going to be in the line of fire**.  
 ④ Poor you! **You've really been in the wars**!  
 ⑤ I have some very bad news, **but please don't shoot the messenger**!

## 16.3

- ① B ② C ③ A ④ A ⑤ B

## 16.4

- ① Balwant had to bite the **bullet** and tell his teacher that he hadn't done his homework.  
 ② Buying a house can be a **minefield**. There's always so much to think about!  
 ③ I'm going to take my lunch break now. Could you hold down the **fort** until I get back?  
 ④ Our daughter dropped a **bombshell** when she told us she and her new boyfriend were engaged.  
 ⑤ Sonia stuck to her **guns** and told her daughter that she couldn't go to the party.

## 16.5

- ① stabbed me in the back  
 ② an uphill battle  
 ③ crossing swords  
 ④ like a war zone  
 ⑤ an ax to grind

# 17

## 17.3

- ① a drop in the ocean  
 ② the middle of nowhere  
 ③ everything but the kitchen sink  
 ④ off the beaten path  
 ⑤ in dribs and drabs  
 ⑥ precious little

## 17.4

- A 4 B 1 C 5 D 3 E 6 F 2

## 17.5

- ① The guests began to arrive at the party **in dribs and drabs**.  
 ② My new apartment is **within walking distance** of my workplace.  
 ③ We always take **everything but the kitchen sink** when we travel.  
 ④ The castle is in a **far-flung corner** of the island. It takes hours to drive there.  
 ⑤ Sharon lives in **the middle of nowhere**. You can't get there by train.

## 17.6

- ① The Olympic swimming team has won tons of medals.  
 ② Carla's school is just a stone's throw away from the bus stop.  
 ③ You don't need to drive to the store. It's just around the corner.  
 ④ The forest stretched as far as the eye can see.

## 17.7

- ① the middle of nowhere  
 ② far and wide  
 ③ a thousand-and-one  
 ④ few and far between  
 ⑤ within walking distance  
 ⑥ by a whisker  
 ⑦ everything but the kitchen sink

# 18

## 18.4

- ① My cake's going to be great. I'm just putting the **finishing** touches on it.  
 ② The pottery course was far too difficult for a **newbie** like me.  
 ③ Mike's made a **fresh** start this year. He's eating much more healthily.  
 ④ I've been marking tests all day, but the end is in **sight**!

## 18.5

- ① beginning ② ending ③ beginning  
 ④ beginning ⑤ ending

## 18.6

- ① Mia's fashion firm **got off to a flying start**. She has already won three awards.  
 ② It was **the end of an era** when our boss retired after 30 years.  
 ③ After selling the last sandwich, Dean decided to **call it a day**.  
 ④ Sophie's café finally **got off the ground** when she lowered her prices.  
 ⑤ Trains across the city **ground to a halt** because of the snow.

## 18.7

- ① a fitting end ② call it a day ③ kicked off  
 ④ get going ⑤ drew to a close



# 19

## 19.4

- 1 Rain is fairly likely.
- 2 Buster is likely to win.
- 3 It is very unlikely.
- 4 She is unlikely to pass.
- 5 It is almost certain.

## 19.5

- 1 I think Ruben's dreams of becoming a pop star are totally pie in the sky.
- 2 It looks like a medal is in the cards for Noriko after that amazing throw.
- 3 I'm afraid you're out of luck. The last train has just left the station.
- 4 We don't stand a chance of getting into the museum before lunchtime.
- 5 You're in luck! We have one dress left in your size.

## 19.6

- 1 It was just a case of **beginner's luck** when I won that card game. I'd never played it before.
- 2 There was only a **slim chance** that we'd see a cheetah, so we were amazed when we spotted one.
- 3 Russell has injured his knee. It's **touch-and-go** whether he'll be able to play in the tournament this month.
- 4 I hadn't studied for my tests, so it was **sheer luck** when I passed them.
- 5 I had an interview for a great job, but **blew it** when I arrived half an hour late.

## 19.7

- 1 on the off-chance
- 2 against all odds
- 3 a stroke of luck
- 4 Don't push your luck!
- 5 the hot favorite

# 20

## 20.3

- A 3 B 5 C 4 D 1 E 2

## 20.4

- 1 There have been teething problems with the new computer system at work.
- 2 Unclogging my sink was a piece of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber.
- 3 Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the neck.
- 4 Getting around my city is a breeze. Our trains are excellent.
- 5 Finishing the building this month is going to be a tall order.

## 20.5

EASE:

**smooth sailing**  
**a breeze**  
**like shooting fish in a barrel**  
**with her eyes shut**

DIFFICULTY:

**easier said than done**  
**out of his depth**  
**a tall order**  
**like getting blood from a stone**

## 20.6

- 1 Don't **make a mountain out of a molehill**. I only asked you to help me bake a cake!
- 2 My home improvements **opened a can of worms**. The builders discovered so many problems.
- 3 The team has a **mountain to climb** if it wants to win the game.
- 4 I was **like a fish out of water** at the science fiction convention.
- 5 Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a **pain in the neck**.

# 21

## 21.3

- 1 Zahira is an excellent scuba teacher. You're **in safe hands** with her.
- 2 Hayley had a **close shave**. That ball almost hit her!
- 3 I advised Kathy not to go into the water. It would be **risking life and limb**.
- 4 The bear had left, and **the coast was clear**. We could continue with our trek.

## 21.4

- 1 safety 2 safety 3 danger 4 danger  
5 safety 6 danger 7 safety 8 danger  
9 danger

## 21.5

- 1 Maddy caught the train by the skin of her teeth. It left a few seconds later.
- 2 The rescue team found the climbers safe and sound after a week-long search.
- 3 You have to take your life in your hands every time you cross this road.
- 4 Make sure you wear a helmet when you're cycling! Remember, safety first!
- 5 The route through the jungle was fraught with danger.

## 21.6

- 1 in one piece
- 2 had a narrow escape
- 3 safety first
- 4 in safe hands
- 5 too close for comfort

# 22

## 22.3

- 1 a tough nut to crack
- 2 fighting a losing battle
- 3 rubbed salt into the wound
- 4 grin and bear it
- 5 thrown in at the deep end
- 6 pick up the pieces

## 22.4

- B  
D  
E  
G  
I

## 22.5

- 1 Oh, no, I've missed the last bus home. I'm really in a **jam** now.
- 2 Working on the farm meant I had to come to **grips** with driving a tractor.
- 3 The peeling wallpaper was just the **tip** of the iceberg. The house needed so many repairs.
- 4 I hated working at the diner. The final **straw** was when they made me dress as a chicken.
- 5 The plumber got to the **bottom** of what's causing the leak. We need to replace the pipe.

## 22.6

- 1 Not being able to read music was a **stumbling block** when I started learning the saxophone.
- 2 The protesters want to stop the building being demolished, but they're **fighting a losing battle**.
- 3 If you let your children eat whatever they want for dinner, you're **making a rod for your own back**.
- 4 I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to **grin and bear it**.
- 5 I can't believe you've upset your sister again! I'm the one who has to **pick up the pieces**.

## 22.7

- 1 a nightmare
- 2 a bumpy ride
- 3 in dire straits
- 4 a tough nut to crack
- 5 in a jam

# 23

## 23.4

- 1 What a scorcher! It's perfect weather for a barbecue.
- 2 We had to leave the beach because it started bucketing down.
- 3 Nina always takes her dog for a walk come rain or shine.

## 23.5

- 1 You weren't listening to me, were you? You had your head in the clouds.
- 2 This politician used to be really popular, but now the tide has turned.
- 3 Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just a storm in a teacup.
- 4 You don't need a coat, Phil! It's like an oven outside.
- 5 I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to hit the hay.
- 6 There are lots of cafés and restaurants in my neck of the woods.

## 23.6

- 1 a stick-in-the-mud
- 2 a ray of sunshine
- 3 take a rain check on
- 4 a breath of fresh air
- 5 a howling wind
- 6 like an oven
- 7 raining cats and dogs

## 23.7

- A 2 B 5 C 4 D 1 E 7 F 8 G 3 H 6

# 24

## 24.3

- 1 I always enjoy a chitchat **with my sister over coffee**.
- 2 The students parroted the facts **without using their own words**.
- 3 Ahmed talks the talk, **but isn't very hardworking**.
- 4 I hate it when my boss **talks down to me!**
- 5 Leo can talk himself out of **any awkward situation**.
- 6 My colleagues love to talk shop **when they meet for lunch**.
- 7 This politician has a reputation **for speaking his mind**.
- 8 I made small talk with Marisha **while we waited for the train**.
- 9 I've tried telling Maya to clean up her room, **but it's like talking to a brick wall**.

## 24.4

- 1 talk shop
- 2 spins a good yarn
- 3 She can talk!
- 4 talk big
- 5 parroted
- 6 talks down to me
- 7 talks the talk

## 24.5

- 1 talk some sense into him
- 2 talk your ear off
- 3 a loudmouth
- 4 talks the talk

## 24.6

- 1 Nina keeps **droning on** about her new car. It's getting really boring!
- 2 This politician has a reputation for **speaking his mind**.
- 3 Sarah was born with **the gift of the gab**. She could sell you anything.
- 4 **Cat got your tongue?** You usually have so much to say.
- 5 I sat on the shore with my boyfriend, **shooting the breeze**.

# 25

## 25.4

- A 5 B 7 C 1 D 6 E 4 F 2 G 8 H 3

## 25.5

- 1 We must have **got our wires crossed**. I thought the dress code for this party was casual.
- 2 When news stories are shocking, I always **take them with a grain of salt**.
- 3 The boss **stirred up a hornet's nest** when she said we would have to take a pay cut.
- 4 After leaving the band, Marco **dished the dirt** about the other band members to a journalist.
- 5 Anna's manager **touched base** with her for a quick update on her research.
- 6 The tour rep **broke the news** to us that our flight had been canceled.

## 25.6

- 1 I'm afraid your cat will have to stay here overnight, but I promise I'll keep you in the picture about how she's recovering.
- 2 Why did you spill the beans and tell Luke I had a new boyfriend? I wanted to tell him myself.
- 3 This restaurant couldn't afford an advertising campaign, but it has become really popular by word of mouth.
- 4 I'm planning a surprise trip to Paris with Liam to celebrate our wedding anniversary. Don't let the cat out of the bag!
- 5 Rumors that the two actors had secretly gotten married spread like wildfire.

## 25.7

- 1 the bearer of bad news
- 2 take them with a grain of salt
- 3 got our wires crossed
- 4 heard it through the grapevine
- 5 touched base

# 26

## 26.5

- 1 The children are being very quiet. I think there's something fishy going on!

- 2 Tania told me a secret but asked me to keep it under my hat.
- 3 My wife was angry when I went behind her back and bought myself a new motorcycle.
- 4 I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. My lips are sealed.
- 5 I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a white lie and said I loved it.

## 26.6

TRUTH:  
**a whistleblower came clean above board brutally honest**

LIES:  
**bending the truth telling half-truths went behind her back took us for a ride**

## 26.7

- A  
C  
D  
G

## 26.8

Hi Sunita,  
I have some exciting news for you, but please keep it **under** your hat because it's **top** secret at the moment. I've been promoted! I had a **hunch** that I would get the job because my interview went well. As I said, please don't tell anyone because my new boss still wants to keep it under **wraps**.  
Love, Lindsay

## 26.9

- 1 I'm not going to tell you how much my house cost. It's **none of your business!**
- 2 **A whistleblower** has told the authorities about the dirty conditions in the kitchen at work.
- 3 I knew Frida hadn't been out sick. I **smelled a rat** when she came back to work with a suntan.
- 4 David **lied through his teeth** to his mom. He claimed the cat had broken her favorite vase.
- 5 My teacher was **brutally honest** with me and told me my essay was terrible.

# 27

## 27.3

- 1 Felipe **cast** a glance at his watch. The bus was already 10 minutes late.
- 2 Jenny, please tell me how the interview went. I'm all **ears!**
- 3 Bastian **kept** a close watch on his children as they played outside.
- 4 The examiner watched us like a **hawk**, making sure we didn't cheat.

- 5 Kezia looked furious when I told her I'd torn her dress. If **looks** could kill!
- 6 When my parents got **wind** of the fact that I'd had a house party, they were furious.
- 7 Omar lent a **sympathetic** ear when I broke up with my boyfriend.

## 27.4

A 3 B 1 C 9 D 4 E 2 F 8 G 6  
H 5 I 7

## 27.5

- 1 If looks could kill!
- 2 hard of hearing
- 3 listening with half an ear
- 4 fell on deaf ears
- 5 cast an eye over
- 6 watched us like a hawk
- 7 lent a sympathetic ear
- 8 turned a blind eye

## 27.6

- 1 Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, walls have ears!
- 2 We kept our eyes peeled, hoping we'd spot some rare birds.
- 3 Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was a million miles away.
- 4 The border guard gave my documents the once-over, then let me drive on.
- 5 The teacher turned a blind eye to his students' bad behavior.

## 27.7

- 1 music to my ears
- 2 an eagle eye
- 3 cast an eye over
- 4 fell on deaf ears
- 5 hard of hearing

# 28

## 28.2

- 1 face the music
- 2 changed your tune
- 3 jazz up
- 4 The show must go on!
- 5 fine-tune
- 6 get the show on the road
- 7 read him like a book

## 28.3

- 1 Antonio is great at flower arranging. He **has it down to an art**.
- 2 Juanita is so careful at work. She **does everything by the book**.
- 3 I'm going to **take a page out of your book** and clean my desk.
- 4 The police chief **put us in the picture** about the bank robbery.
- 5 How many times must I **drum it into your head**? Wipe your feet on the mat!

## 28.4

- 1 toot her own horn
- 2 music to my ears
- 3 drum up
- 4 made a scene
- 5 is like a broken record
- 6 face the music

## 28.5

- 1 Ian's desserts are amazing. He'll be a **tough act to follow** when he leaves.
- 2 Arjun felt **left out of the picture** when his roommates got a dog without telling him.
- 3 You've **changed your tune**! I thought you didn't like cats.
- 4 Nisha is helping me **fine-tune** my presentation for tomorrow morning.
- 5 Dennis broke his mom's laptop. He had to **face the music** and tell her.

# 29

## 29.3

- 1 We sat in front of the TV stuffing our faces with popcorn.
- 2 Nigel took a tray of piping hot cupcakes out of the oven.
- 3 Ethan took his new client out for a sit-down meal.
- 4 You shouldn't eat so many cookies! You'll spoil your appetite.
- 5 Aliyah whipped up an omelet for Caleb and his friends.
- 6 Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a feast fit for a king.
- 7 I washed down my pizza with a glass of lemonade.
- 8 We complained to the waiter that our soup was stone cold.

## 29.4

1 C 2 B 3 C 4 B 5 C

## 29.5

- 1 Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a **feast fit for a king**.
- 2 I was in a rush, so I **grabbed something to eat** from the fast food stand.
- 3 The sight of the cake in the café window **made my mouth water**.
- 4 Chris bought a **round of drinks** for the basketball team.
- 5 I'm so glad I ordered an extra-large pizza. **I could eat a horse!**

## 29.6

- 1 a square meal
- 2 eats like a bird
- 3 wolfed down
- 4 whipped up
- 5 spoil your appetite

# 30

## 30.3

- 1 I don't feel very well. I think I'm **coming down with something**.
- 2 Moving to the country has given Kira a **new lease on life**.
- 3 Ollie received a **clean bill of health** from his doctor.
- 4 The dancers in this show have to be **as fit as a fiddle**.

## 30.4

- 1 health 2 sickness 3 sickness 4 health  
5 sickness 6 sickness 7 health 8 sickness  
9 sickness

## 30.5

- 1 This music's far too loud! It has given me a **splitting headache**.
- 2 A week at a health spa was **just what the doctor ordered** after a stressful month at work.
- 3 Uma is **up and about** following her operation last week.
- 4 Imran looks **the picture of health** since he started going to the gym.
- 5 A relaxing afternoon in the park helped me **recharge my batteries**.

## 30.6

- 1 the worse for wear
- 2 throwing up
- 3 on the mend
- 4 in bad shape
- 5 flare up
- 6 a heavy cold
- 7 get in shape

# 31

## 31.4

- 1 Brad thought he would pass the test easily, **but he only scraped by**.
- 2 Our cutting-edge products **have made our company millions of dollars**.
- 3 The professor's astrophysics lecture **went over my head**.
- 4 Ian is such a bookworm. **He loves reading**.
- 5 Vineetha loves modern art. **She knows it inside out**.
- 6 Ping's design for the new library **really breaks the mold**.
- 7 These doctors have made a **breakthrough in their medical research**.

## 31.5

- 1 We both thought of buying Dan a camera for his birthday. **Great minds think alike!**
- 2 Dion's new laptop is **light-years ahead of** his old one.



- 3 Ben accused Stefan of being a **copycat**. Their artworks were very similar.  
 4 Mary's an expert in ancient history. She really **knows her stuff**.  
 5 The professor's astrophysics lecture **went over my head**.

### 31.6

- 1 Andrea only started work here last week. She's still learning the **ropes**.  
 2 I can show you around my city. I know it like the **back** of my hand.  
 3 My client wanted a completely new design. I had to put on my thinking **cap**.  
 4 I just can't make heads or **tails** of this map.  
 5 Peter's **brushing** up on his French before his vacation in Paris.

### 31.7

- 1 scraped by  
 2 state-of-the-art  
 3 a copycat  
 4 a bookworm  
 5 can't make heads or tails of  
 6 a breakthrough  
 7 passed with flying colors

## 32

### 32.2

- 1 I loved looking after Nadia's cat while she was on vacation. It was easy money.  
 2 Vegetables don't have to be expensive. Carrots and cabbage are dirt cheap at this store.  
 3 My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees!  
 4 It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to throw money around.

### 32.3

CHEAP:  
**dirt cheap**  
**rock-bottom prices**  
**cost next to nothing**

EXPENSIVE:  
**a hefty sum**  
**pricey**  
**a rip-off**

### 32.4

- 1 tighten his belt  
 2 saved for a rainy day  
 3 out of pocket  
 4 struck it rich  
 5 rolling in it

### 32.5

A 4 B 6 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 5

### 32.6

- 1 I found it hard to **make ends meet** when I was a student, so I started working in a café.  
 2 Aranza and Dominic decided to **go Dutch** at the end of the meal.  
 3 Luna wants to buy a house soon, so she's building up a **nest-egg**.  
 4 Marco had to **tighten his belt**, so he started bringing his own lunch to work.  
 5 Getting the car fixed will be expensive, but luckily I have **saved for a rainy day**.

## 33

### 33.2

CHEAP:  
**a good deal**  
**bargain-basement prices**  
**slash prices**

EXPENSIVE:  
**highway robbery**  
**cost an arm and a leg**  
**pay over the odds**

### 33.3

A 9 B 4 C 3 D 7 E 1 F 5 G 6 H 2 I 8

### 33.4

- 1 He looks for cheap things.  
 2 The jacket was cheap.  
 3 They reduce prices a lot.  
 4 Ayesha doesn't buy anything.  
 5 They bought lots of things.

### 33.5

- 1 My new suit cost an arm and a leg. I bought it from a tailor in Milan.  
 2 After winning the lottery, Tomás went on a shopping spree.  
 3 The taxi from the airport cost more than \$70. It was highway robbery!  
 4 Austin needed some retail therapy, so he spent the afternoon at the mall.  
 5 This store sells designer labels at bargain-basement prices.  
 6 Javier drove a hard bargain, refusing to drop the price of his house.

### 33.6

- 1 splurge  
 2 shop around  
 3 pay over the odds  
 4 slash prices  
 5 cost a fortune

## 34

### 34.3

- 1 get a move on  
 2 from dusk till dawn  
 3 once in a blue moon  
 4 before we knew it  
 5 at the crack of dawn

### 34.4

B  
 D  
 E  
 G  
 H

### 34.5

- 1 Time's **up!** I need you to give me an answer now.  
 2 The teacher told Cory to stop **wasting** time on his phone.  
 3 I was woken in the **dead** of night by a loud noise outside.  
 4 We were up at the **crack** of dawn to catch our flight.  
 5 That meeting really **dragged** on. Colm was almost asleep by the end.

### 34.6

- 1 before we knew it  
 2 the wee hours  
 3 Time's up!  
 4 a drag  
 5 in the nick of time  
 6 flown by

### 34.7

- 1 Júlio **took his time** finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.  
 2 Victoria is always **on time** for her English class.  
 3 Ren arrived **bright and early** for his first day at work.  
 4 It's nearly midnight. It's **about time** we went home.  
 5 Huan only cooks at home **once in a blue moon**.

## 35

### 35.2

- 1 We need to roll up our sleeves **if we're going to finish painting the house today**.  
 2 If Gavin doesn't start working harder, **we'll have to give him the boot**.  
 3 Austin is in a lot of trouble. **I wouldn't want to be in his shoes**.  
 4 My boss got very hot under the collar **when I handed my report in late**.  
 5 The movie was a spy thriller **with lots of cloak-and-dagger action**.  
 6 If Sven wins the race, **I'll eat my hat!**

- 7 My daughter thinks my taste **in music** is **really old hat**.  
8 Jane has a bee in her bonnet **about people dropping litter on the sidewalk**.

### 35.3

- 1 Pedro's upset about failing the test. You'll have to **handle him with kid gloves**.  
2 Ian's become **too big for his boots** since his promotion. He always ignores me.  
3 When Juan won the national art prize, it was **a feather in his cap**.  
4 My teacher explained that I would fail my exam if I didn't **pull my socks up**.

### 35.4

- 1 This steak really is **as tough as shoe leather**. I need a sharper knife!  
2 My cousin is very emotional. He'll start an argument **at the drop of a hat**.  
3 Carter is such **a clever clogs**. He's always the first to raise his hand in class.  
4 After working at the bank for 30 years, it was time for me to **hang up my boots**.  
5 We need to **roll up our sleeves** if we're going to finish painting the house today.

### 35.5

- 1 give him the boot  
2 up my sleeve  
3 in his shoes  
4 roll up our sleeves  
5 hang up my boots  
6 off-the-cuff  
7 lining her pockets  
8 old hat

## 36

### 36.4

- 1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 A

### 36.5

- 1 She's working hard.  
2 We rested.  
3 Julie tried her best.  
4 Carmen is not working hard.  
5 It was hard work.

### 36.6

- 1 Leo always goes the extra mile to keep our customers happy.  
2 Akash usually takes 40 winks after he's finished his lunch.  
3 I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I have my hands full.  
4 Celia had to put her head down and finish her essay to meet the deadline.  
5 Brandon is a slacker. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers.  
6 After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his feet up and watch TV.

### 36.7

- 1 pulled out all the stops  
2 roll up our sleeves  
3 snowed under  
4 elbow grease  
5 didn't lift a finger

## 37

### 37.2

- 1 The client hates my design for the company logo, so it's **back to the drawing board**.  
2 The traffic usually moves **at a snail's pace** during the rush hour.  
3 The guests **made a beeline for** all the cakes on the table.  
4 Scientists are **on the verge of** developing intelligent robots.

### 37.3

- A 3 B 5 C 1 D 2 E 4

### 37.4

- 1 begin a trip or a drive  
2 open and working well  
3 back to the beginning  
4 not making any progress  
5 made a lot of progress

### 37.5

- 1 The hikers **forged ahead** in spite of the terrible snowstorm.  
2 I'm **running around like a headless chicken** trying to get the meal ready for my guests tonight.  
3 **Slowly but surely**, my daughter is learning to ride a bike.  
4 I was late for my business meeting, so I had to eat lunch **on the run**.  
5 The children threw the ball **back and forth** as they played outside.

## 38

### 38.3

- 1 a slap on the wrist  
2 broke the law  
3 twisted her arm  
4 reached a verdict  
5 calls the shots

### 38.4

- 1 It was the day of reckoning. The judge was about to sentence Mason for burglary.  
2 It's important to obey the law when you're cycling in the city.  
3 It's the children who rule the roost in Kaylee's family. They don't respect her.

- 4 Ben suffered the consequences of his misbehavior and had to wash the car.  
5 Seth took the law into his own hands and confronted the vandals.

### 38.5

- 1 Carla refused to **toe the line** and wear the same uniform as the other students.  
2 Jack's boss is always **breathing down his neck**. He wants more independence.  
3 The party **got out of hand**, so the neighbors called the police.  
4 Since leaving jail, Crystal has **kept on the straight and narrow**.  
5 Pedro's father **put his foot down** and refused to let him watch TV.

### 38.6

- 1 let him off the hook  
2 reached a verdict  
3 twisted her arm  
4 the head  
5 calls the shots  
6 a slap on the wrist

## 39

### 39.3

SUCCESS:  
**hit the big time**  
**worked like a charm**  
**brought the house down**

FAILURE:  
**on the ropes**  
**go sideways**  
**screwed up**

### 39.4

- 1 The gang's plan to rob the bank **went belly up** when a policeman recognized Mike.  
2 Nicola's decision to take her dog shopping turned out to be **a recipe for disaster**.  
3 Nathan's first book was **an overnight success**. It sold a million copies in a month.  
4 Lucy's beauty salon is **going from strength to strength**. She's opening another soon.  
5 Margaret's performance **fell flat on its face**. She can't sing!

### 39.5

- 1 success 2 failure 3 failure 4 success  
5 failure 6 success 7 success 8 success  
9 failure

### 39.6

- 1 won it hands down  
2 go sideways  
3 an overnight success  
4 brought the house down  
5 fell flat on its face  
6 going from strength to strength



- 7 a recipe for disaster
- 8 hit the jackpot
- 9 screwed up

40

### 40.3

- 1 Andrew made sure he **had his ducks in a row** before his presentation.
- 2 Maya is a great designer. She always **thinks outside the box**.
- 3 Irena's internship at the fashion firm helped her to get a **foot in the door**.
- 4 We're **working around the clock** to make sure the new subway line opens on time.

### 40.4

A 5 B 3 C 7 D 6 E 1 F 4 G 8 H 2

### 40.5

- 1 Carlos has lots of **hands-on** experience working with horses.
- 2 Sara has handed in her **notice** at work. She's going to study engineering.
- 3 After studying for many years, Anna embarked on a **career** as a surgeon.
- 4 I'm really bored at work, so I've decided to start job **hunting**.
- 5 Rory goes the extra **mile** to make sure his customers are satisfied.

### 40.6

- 1 landed a job
- 2 in a nutshell
- 3 tied up
- 4 goes the extra mile
- 5 fired

41

### 41.5

- 1 I've decided to leave the rat race **and move to the country**.
- 2 My dad had a blue-collar job **in the construction industry**.
- 3 We decided to blacklist this supplier **after they sent us faulty products**.
- 4 After many years in journalism, **Simon became a big cheese in the media**.
- 5 There's a lot of red tape involved **in health and safety in the warehouse**.

### 41.6

- 1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create **a level playing field**.
- 2 Our range of cereal is **a cash cow**. It's cheap to make and customers love it.
- 3 I have **a white-collar job** in an investment bank.

- 4 Our new bags are **selling like hotcakes**. We need to order more.
- 5 Evan is always asking me what to do. I feel like I have to **spoon-feed** him.

### 41.7

- 1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create **a level playing field**.
- 2 Emily is **a team player**. She works so well with all her colleagues at the bookstore.
- 3 Our boss is leaving the restaurant soon, and Angela is **the front-runner** to get his job.
- 4 We've already reduced our price by 25 percent. **The ball is in your court**.
- 5 I play in a band every weekend, but teaching guitar is **my bread and butter**.
- 6 Boris was given **a golden handshake** when he retired from the company.

### 41.8

- 1 in the red
- 2 bring home the bacon
- 3 the lion's share
- 4 the top dog
- 5 a white-collar job

42

### 42.2

- 1 All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a league of her own.
- 2 This client keeps moving the goalposts. Now she wants the bedroom painted red.
- 3 We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or swim.
- 4 We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball rolling.
- 5 I often have to work evenings, but I knew the score when I decided to accept this job.

### 42.3

- 1 cleared a hurdle
- 2 in full swing
- 3 a ballpark figure
- 4 par for the course
- 5 below par
- 6 on the ball
- 7 get the ball rolling

### 42.4

- 1 the gloves are off
- 2 at this stage of the game
- 3 thrown in at the deep end
- 4 saved by the bell
- 5 threw us a curveball

### 42.5

- 1 The firefighters **tackled** the fire at the warehouse and made sure everyone got out safely.
- 2 I've had cats and rabbits before, but looking after a dog is **a whole new ball game**.

- 3 The plumber gave us **a ballpark figure** for the cost of the new bathroom.
- 4 I'm sorry you didn't get through to the next round, Cameron. **You win some, you lose some!**
- 5 I've failed my driving test for the tenth time. I think it's time to **throw in the towel**.

43

### 43.3

- 1 Doug is **making** progress on his new novel and hopes to finish it soon.
- 2 I want to get fit, so I've started **doing** exercise every day.
- 3 **Do** your best in the game today! I know you can beat the other team.
- 4 There's something wrong with the photocopier. It's **making** a strange noise.
- 5 I always **do** my homework as soon as I get home from school.
- 6 The children had fun painting, but they've really **made** a mess.
- 7 Can you **do** me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

### 43.4

- 1 Zoe did her hair before her best friend's engagement party.
- 2 I made a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business.
- 3 I was quite offended when Laura made a joke about my new sweater.
- 4 The flood did a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.
- 5 We did an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.

### 43.5

A 5 B 8 C 1 D 4 E 7 F 3 G 6 H 2

### 43.6

- 1 I **made** some friends from the local area while I was on vacation.
- 2 I always **do** my homework as soon as I get home from school.
- 3 We're **making** arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.
- 4 I was really pleased when Sue **made** a cake for my birthday.
- 5 We **did** an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.
- 6 I was quite offended when Laura **made** a joke about my new sweater.
- 7 The flood **did** a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.
- 8 I want to get fit, so I've started **doing** exercise every day.
- 9 My daughter always **makes** her bed in the morning.
- 10 Can you **do** me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

## 44.3

GIVE:

a presentation  
an example  
the impression  
birth  
a speech  
priority  
me a hug  
an answer

TAKE:

a photo  
a chance  
a nap  
a bite  
a shower  
a seat  
the lead  
a look

## 44.4

- 1 Dwayne likes to take a shower as soon as he gets home from work.
- 2 Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures.
- 3 Hamid took a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.
- 4 Near the end of the race, Axel passed the other athletes and took the lead.

## 44.5

- 1 I had a big suitcase, so Selma offered to give me a lift to the airport.
- 2 The dog gave the impression that he wanted to go out for a walk.
- 3 Mario and I are taking a drawing class this evening.
- 4 The receptionist asked me to take a seat while I waited for the hairdresser.
- 5 Drivers should always give priority to pedestrians.

## 44.6

A 3 B 1 C 4 D 2 E 6 F 5 G 7

## 44.7

- 1 When Danny got to the hotel, he gave me a call to say he had arrived safely.
- 2 Hamid took a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.
- 3 The professor gave a speech to the students about her new discovery.
- 4 Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures.
- 5 Dwayne likes to take a shower as soon as he gets home from work.

## 45.3

- 1 After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to have a rest.
- 2 I need to go to bed now. I'm getting tired.
- 3 Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.
- 4 Michael and Heather had an argument about the rules of the game.
- 5 Lily had a conversation with another passenger on the train.

## 45.4

A 3 B 4 C 1 D 2 E 8 F 5 G 7 H 6

## 45.5

- 1 Robin always gets angry when his children refuse to eat their food.
- 2 I have an appointment to see the vet at 2 o'clock this afternoon.
- 3 Sean and Lisa had a talk about the new design for the office.
- 4 Tiffany had fun at the festival with her friends.

## 45.6

- 1 Kylie had a party to celebrate her 18th birthday. It was great fun!
- 2 Claude is getting better at making cakes.
- 3 I need to go to bed now. I'm getting tired.
- 4 After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to have a rest.
- 5 You really need to get going if you want to catch the train.

## 46.3

A 3 B 1 C 5 D 2 E 4

## 46.4

- 1 Catalina has set the date for her wedding next summer.
- 2 After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I put it in writing.
- 3 I set homework for my students at the end of every lesson.
- 4 I had a long way to drive, so I set off nice and early.

## 46.5

- 1 put her cards on the table
- 2 put off
- 3 put a stop to
- 4 put me in charge of
- 5 put it bluntly

## 46.6

- 1 I really put my foot in it when I asked if Hazel was Tamsin's mother. They are actually sisters.

- 2 Judy was sad to see the birds trapped in their cage, so she set them free.
- 3 The ship set sail for China this morning. It will arrive in 20 days.
- 4 Terry puts his family first. He always leaves work in time to meet his children after school.
- 5 Sakura has been putting the heat on the contractors to finish the job quickly.

## 46.7

- 1 Silvio called the fire department after he accidentally set fire to his shed.
- 2 After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I put it in writing.
- 3 I had a long way to drive, so I set off nice and early.
- 4 I always put off doing my homework until the last minute.
- 5 Ed set the table before his guests arrived for dinner.
- 5 Irfan has put me in charge of the store while he is on vacation.

## 47.3

GO:

bankrupt  
quiet  
abroad  
fishing  
deaf  
crazy  
missing  
bad

COME:

to a standstill  
close  
to a decision  
into view  
to an agreement  
in last  
prepared  
to the rescue

## 47.4

- 1 Riya came prepared for the camping trip.
- 2 When the play came to an end, everyone left the theater.
- 3 My kids go crazy whenever they hear that song.
- 4 That style of shirt went out of fashion years ago!

## 47.5

A 4 B 1 C 3 D 2 E 6 F 5

## 47.6

- 1 This fruit has gone bad. It's not good to eat.
- 2 My aunt's going deaf. You'll have to speak more loudly.
- 3 The judges have come to a decision about the winner.

- 4 Sara's fashion boutique **went** bankrupt. She couldn't afford the rent.
- 5 Everyone **went** quiet when the boss walked into the room.
- 6 My move **went** smoothly. I had lots of people helping me.
- 7 The team has **come** to an agreement about which logo design to use.

## 47.7

- 1 Joshua's dog has **gone missing**. He's putting up signs around town.
- 2 We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards **came to the rescue**.
- 3 Dougie prefers to **go abroad** on vacation.
- 4 Pavel likes to **go fishing** on Saturdays.
- 5 Paula trained very hard and **came in first** in the hurdles.

# 48

## 48.5

- 1 Two firefighters **paid** a visit to my son's school today to talk about fire safety.
- 2 I'm trying to call the bank and they've asked me to **hold** the line. It's so annoying!
- 3 Cleo told me about her mom's surprise party but asked me to **keep** it a secret.
- 4 We **hold** a meeting each Monday to discuss the week ahead.

## 48.6

- 1 catch his eye
- 2 caught the train
- 3 caught a cold
- 4 catch my breath
- 5 catch fire

## 48.7

- 1 B 2 B 3 C 4 A

## 48.8

- 1 The teacher asked the students to **keep quiet during the test**.
- 2 The children paid close attention to John **as he told them about his travels**.
- 3 I live with my parents, but **pay my way by buying groceries**.
- 4 Natalie always keeps calm **when she has to talk to angry customers**.
- 5 After climbing the stairs, **I stopped to catch my breath**.
- 6 Pari usually drives to work, **but she caught the train this morning**.
- 7 Raul caught a glimpse of **a deer as he hiked through the forest**.
- 8 Kelly paid me a compliment **and said she liked my new haircut**.

## 48.9

- 1 pay you back
- 2 paid tribute
- 3 hold my tongue
- 4 hold the line
- 5 paid me a compliment
- 6 holds a grudge
- 7 paid close attention

# 49

## 49.7

- 1 André gets up **ridiculously early** every morning.
- 2 This food is **absolutely delicious**. You're such a good cook!
- 3 We **strongly advise** you not to travel unless it is absolutely necessary.
- 4 That date was **unbelievably awkward**. We had nothing to say to each other.
- 5 Gina was **deeply concerned** when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.

## 49.8

- 1 Cesar's new movie was **highly praised by the critics**.
- 2 The park is absolutely beautiful **at this time of year**.
- 3 I was deeply hurt when Madison **didn't invite me to her wedding**.
- 4 The portions in this restaurant **are ridiculously small**.
- 5 Malachi strongly believes in **looking after the environment**.

## 49.9

ABSOLUTELY:  
delicious  
useless  
fantastic

HIGHLY:  
unlikely  
probable  
praised

RIDICULOUSLY:  
easy  
expensive  
early

STRONGLY:  
believes  
feels  
advise

## 49.10

- 1 I was **unbelievably** lucky to get my violin back after I left it on the train.
- 2 Gina was **deeply** concerned when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.
- 3 I **highly** recommend this book. I stayed up all night reading it!

- 4 Some people can be **unbelievably** selfish when they are on the bus.
- 5 Malachi **strongly** believes in looking after the environment.

# 50

## 50.4

- 1 I don't need help carrying my bag. It's as light as a **feather**.
- 2 My uncle is as strong as an **ox**. He's a champion weightlifter.
- 3 My grandfather is as **wise** as an owl. He always gives good advice.
- 4 I'm as blind as a **bat** without my glasses.
- 5 Paul is as quiet as a **mouse**. He never talks in meetings.

## 50.5

- 1 There was no rain for months, and the land was **as dry as a bone**.
- 2 Fiona looked **as proud as a peacock** in her new hat.
- 3 Mary's car is **as old as the hills**. She refuses to buy a new one.
- 4 Selma **slept like a log** after a long day climbing in the Alps.

## 50.6

- 1 as good as gold
- 2 as deaf as a post
- 3 shaking like a leaf
- 4 as white as a sheet
- 5 as fast as lightning
- 6 as brave as a lion

## 50.7

- A
- C
- E
- G
- H

## 50.8

- 1 Have you been out in the snow? Your hands are **as cold as ice!**
- 2 Mary's car is **as old as the hills**. She refuses to buy a new one.
- 3 Javier was **as busy as a bee** getting ready for the party.
- 4 Roy's new suit **fits like a glove**. He looks really good.
- 5 My grandmother is **as deaf as a post**. She always turns up the TV really loud.



# 51

## 51.2

- 1 Honesty is the best policy.
- 2 Many hands make light work.
- 3 There's no time like the present.
- 4 Two heads are better than one.
- 5 Curiosity killed the cat.
- 6 Better late than never.
- 7 Actions speak louder than words.

## 51.3

- A 2 B 5 C 4 D 9 E 7 F 1 G 8  
H 3 I 6

## 51.4

- 1 **Don't count your chickens before they hatch.** Kim! The game isn't over yet.
- 2 Stop sitting by the phone waiting to hear if you got the job. **A watched pot never boils.**
- 3 I've been playing the trumpet every day and I'm really improving. **Practice makes perfect.**
- 4 Azra adores her pet snake. I suppose **beauty is in the eye of the beholder.**

## 51.5

- 1 Flo's incompetence at work is affecting the whole team. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link.
- 2 We're almost ready for the party and we've still got plenty of time. Many hands make light work.
- 3 The day the sales began, Tamsin was outside the store at 6 in the morning. The early bird catches the worm!
- 4 Jakob really misses his girlfriend now that she has gone to college. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
- 5 You were meant to give me this assignment a week ago, but better late than never.

## 51.6

- 1 Better late than never.
- 2 Honesty is the best policy.
- 3 Curiosity killed the cat.
- 4 Actions speak louder than words.

# 52

## 52.8

- 1 Yes, I will **lend** you my laptop, but please be careful with it.
- 2 I **expect** that there will be lots of people at the party.
- 3 I **hope** I still get into college.
- 4 Suddenly, Jules **heard** a loud bang coming from behind him.
- 5 This pie that you've been baking **smells** delicious!

## 52.9

- 1 Jules often **listens to** music on his walk home from work.

- 2 Come outside and **look at** the flowers I planted last month.
- 3 The Lions have **won** the soccer championship again.
- 4 The Lions **beat** the Stars 3-1.
- 5 I **saw** Keiko's large ginger cat lying on the lawn.

## 52.10

- 1 The cat watched the birds **sitting in a tree.**
- 2 I wish my **test results were better.**
- 3 This pie that you've been baking **smells delicious!**
- 4 Suddenly, Jules heard a loud bang **coming from behind him.**
- 5 I expect that there will be **lots of people at the party.**
- 6 Come outside and look at **the flowers I planted last month.**
- 7 The Lions have won **the soccer championship again.**
- 8 I'm really looking forward to **seeing the fireworks display at the party.**
- 9 Jules often listens to **music on his walk home from work.**

## 52.11

- A 6 B 3 C 1 D 8 E 5 F 7 G 4 H 2

# 53

## 53.8

- 1 "Oh, no," said Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."
- 2 Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase.
- 3 There is lots of work to do. I have to stack shelves and serve customers.
- 4 Are you sure you want to buy that car? It would be more sensible to save your money.

## 53.9

- 1 Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident.
- 2 Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go.
- 3 Silvia reminded Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday.
- 4 I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket.

## 53.10

- A 4 B 2 C 7 D 3 E 8 F 6 G 1 H 5

## 53.11

- 1 There's no need to be so **sensitive!** I was only trying to give you advice.
- 2 Kayleigh had to **tell** her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.
- 3 Colm **damaged** Sheila's vase when he dropped it.
- 4 Sanjay **remembered** to see his mother, who was delighted to see him.
- 5 Nina **wore** her new dress to Jack's party.
- 6 Don't forget to bring water. I'll **fill up** some bottles for us.

# 54

## 54.2

- 1 a red-letter day
- 2 pitch black
- 3 the green belt
- 4 a black eye
- 5 turned beet-red
- 6 a black-tie event
- 7 a green thumb

## 54.3

Hi Sandra,  
Alyssa knocked on my door out of the **blue** yesterday. I hadn't seen her for years! She said she was going to paint the town **red** for her birthday next week, and invited me along, too. You know I only go out once in a **blue** moon, so I thought it would be a **golden** opportunity to meet some new friends. She said I could bring a friend along. Would you like to come with me?  
Love,  
Janice

## 54.4

- 1 Sergio got a **black eye** after he walked into a lamppost.
- 2 The actress made her first appearance **on the silver screen** in the 1950s.
- 3 I always **get the blues** when my vacation is over and I have to go back to work.
- 4 The boys were **caught red-handed** when they tried to break into the house.

## 54.5

- 1 I thought my new boss was really nice, but he showed his true colors when I forgot to put sugar in his coffee.
- 2 Fake designer goods are sold on the black market.
- 3 There's a gray area in the office dress code. My boss said it was casual, but she told me I couldn't wear shorts.
- 4 I want to be a teacher, so getting work experience at the school was a golden opportunity for me.
- 5 We're protesting against plans to build houses on the green belt in our local area.

## 54.6

- 1 black and blue
- 2 saw red
- 3 a green thumb
- 4 green with envy
- 5 out of the blue

# Index of idioms and expressions

Numbers refer to the module number.

take **40** winks **36.2**

## A

**about** time **34.2**

up and **about** **30.2**

**above** board **26.1**

go **abroad** **47.1**

**absence** makes the heart grow fonder **51.1**

absolutely **49.1**

an **acquired** taste **29.2**

**act** your age **1.2**

a tough **act** to follow **5.1, 28.1**

get your **act** together **37.1**

read someone the riot **act** **9.2**

**actions** speak louder than words **51.1**

**against** all odds **19.3**

come up **against** a brick wall **22.1**

act your **age** **1.2**

come of **age** **1.2**

feel your **age** **1.2**

great **age** **1.2**

improve with **age** **1.2**

ripe old **age** **1.2**

tender **age** **1.2**

that awkward **age** **1.2**

**ages** **34.1**

**agree** to disagree **9.2**

come to an **agreement** **47.2**

forge **ahead** **37.1**

light-years **ahead** of **31.3**

miles **ahead** of **5.1**

a breath of fresh **air** **23.2**

set an **alarm** **46.1**

great minds think **alike** **31.1**

against **all** odds **19.3**

**all** good things come to those who wait **51.1**

**all** good things must come to an end **18.3**

**all** skin and bones **3.1**

**all** too easy **20.1**

I'm **all** ears **27.2**

not **all** that it's cracked up to be **6.1**

**almost** die of shame **13.4**

**almost** jump out of your skin **15.1**

get **angry** **45.2**

give an **answer** **44.1**

**anyone's** guess **19.3**

drift **apart** **2.1**

keep up **appearances** **3.1**

spoil your **appetite** **29.2**

the **apple** of someone's eye **8.1**

have an **appointment** **45.1**

a gray **area** **54.1**

have an **argument** **45.1**

cost an **arm** and a leg **33.1**

twist someone's **arm** **38.2**

up in **arms** **11.1**

go **around** in circles **37.1**

just **around** the corner **17.2**

shop **around** **33.1**

work **around** the clock **40.2**

make **arrangements** **43.1**

have something down to an **art** **28.1**

state-of-the-**art** **31.3**

**as** blind as a bat **50.2**

**as** bold as brass **4.1**

**as** brave as a lion **50.2**

**as** busy as a bee **50.2**

**as** cold as ice **50.1**

**as** deaf as a post **50.1**

**as** dry as a bone **50.1**

**as** far as the eye can see **17.2**

**as** fast as lightning **50.1**

**as** fit as a fiddle **30.2**

**as** flat as a pancake **8.1**

**as** good as gold **50.1**

**as** light as a feather **50.1**

**as** old as the hills **1.1, 50.1**

**as** proud as a peacock **50.2**

**as** quiet as a mouse **50.2**

**as** right as rain **30.2**

**as** strong as an ox **50.2**

**as** tough as shoe leather (US) / **as** tough as an old boot (UK) **35.1**

**as** weak as a kitten **50.2**

**as** white as a sheet **11.2, 50.1**

**as** wise as an owl **50.2**

**at** a snail's pace **37.1**

**at** each other's throats **11.1**

**at** odds **9.2**

**at** the back of your mind **14.1**

**at** the crack of dawn **34.2**

**at** the drop of a hat **35.1**

**at** this stage of the game **42.1**

pay close **attention** **48.1**

an **average** Joe **4.1**

a million miles **away** **27.2**

talk yourself out of any **awkward** situation **24.1**

that **awkward** age **1.2**

unbelievably **awkward** **49.4**

an **ax** to grind **16.1**

## B

have a **baby** **45.1**

a pat on the **back** **15.1**

at the **back** of your mind **14.1**

**back** and forth **37.1**

**back** on track **37.1**

**back** to square one **37.1**

go behind someone's **back** **26.3**

have eyes in the **back** of your head **15.1**

it's **back** to the drawing board **37.1**

know something like the **back** of your hand **31.1**

make a rod for your own **back** **22.2**

pay someone **back** **48.1**

stab someone in the **back** **16.1**

water off a duck's **back** **7.1**

bring home the **bacon** **41.3**

a **bad** workman always blames his tools **51.1**

go **bad** (US) / go off (UK) **47.1**

in **bad** shape **30.2**

leave a **bad** taste in someone's mouth **6.1**

the bearer of **bad** news **25.2**

**badger** someone **7.1**

**badly** behaved **10.4**

let the cat out of the **bag** **25.2**

a whole new **ball** game **42.1**

get the **ball** rolling **18.1, 42.1**

on the **ball** **42.1**

the **ball** is in your court **41.2**

a **ballpark** figure **42.1**

go **bananas** **11.3**

go **bankrupt** **47.1**

**bargain**-basement prices **33.1**

drive a hard **bargain** **33.1**

go **bargain**-hunting **33.1**

**bark** up the wrong tree **7.1**

someone's **bark** is worse than their bite **4.2**

a **barrel** of laughs **4.1**

like shooting fish in a **barrel** **20.1**

lock, stock, and **barrel** **17.1**

touch **base** **25.1**

**bargain**-**basement** prices **33.1**

**as** blind as a **bat** **50.2**

with **bated** breath **12.3**

recharge your **batteries** **30.2**

an uphill **battle** **16.1**

fight a losing **battle** **22.2**

full of **beans** **11.3**

spill the **beans** **25.3**

**bear** a striking resemblance **3.1**

bear in mind (UK), *see* keep in mind (US)

grin and **bear** it **22.2**

the **bearer** of bad news **25.2**

**beat** a dead horse (US) / *flag* a dead horse (UK) **39.2**

**beat** around the bush **23.3**

off the **beaten** path (US) / off the beaten track (UK) **17.2**

behave **beautifully** **10.4**



**beauty** is in the eye of the beholder 51.1  
 an eager **beaver** 12.3  
 make your **bed** 43.1  
 as busy as a **bee** 50.2  
 have a **bee** in your bonnet 35.1  
 the **bee's** knees 5.1  
 make a **beeline** for 37.1  
 turn **beet**-red 54.1  
**before** you know it 34.2  
**beginner's** luck 19.2  
**behave** beautifully 10.4  
**behave** out of character 10.4  
 badly **behaved** 10.4  
 well **behaved** 10.4  
 on your best **behavior** 10.4  
 unacceptable **behavior** 10.4  
 go **behind** someone's back 26.3  
 a joy to **behold** 12.2  
 beauty is in the eye of the **beholder** 51.1  
 ring a **bell** 14.1  
 saved by the **bell** 42.1  
 go **belly** up 39.2  
**below** par 42.1  
**below** the belt 10.1  
 below the **belt** 10.1  
 the green **belt** 54.1  
 tighten your **belt** 32.1  
**bend** the rules 38.1  
**bend** the truth 26.3  
 do your **best** 43.2  
 give something your **best** shot 36.1  
 honesty is the **best** policy 51.1  
 on your **best** behavior 10.4  
 the **best** of both worlds 5.1  
 the **best** thing since sliced bread 5.1  
**better** late than never 51.1  
**better** safe than sorry 21.2  
 get **better** 45.2  
 have seen **better** days 6.1  
 two heads are **better** than one 51.1  
 caught **between** a rock and a hard place 22.2  
 a **big** cheese 41.3  
**big** hearted 10.1  
 hit the **big** time 39.1  
 talk **big** 24.1  
 too **big** for your boots 35.1  
 a clean **bill** of health 30.2  
 a **bird's**-eye view 7.1  
 a little **bird** told me 25.2  
 eat like a **bird** 29.2  
 the early **bird** catches the worm 51.1  
 give **birth** 44.1  
 take the biscuit (UK), *see* take the cake (US)  
 in a **bit** of a tight spot 22.1  
**bite** off more than you can chew 8.1  
**bite** the bullet 16.1  
 someone's bark is worse than their **bite** 4.2  
 take a **bite** 44.2

a **black** eye 54.1  
 a **black**-tie event 54.1  
**black** and blue 54.1  
 pitch **black** 54.1  
 the **black** market 54.1  
 the **black** sheep of the family 2.2  
**blacklist** 41.1  
 a bad workman always **blames** his tools 51.1  
 someone's mind goes **blank** 14.1  
**blaze** a trail 37.1  
 a **blessing** in disguise 5.1  
 as **blind** as a bat 50.2  
 turn a **blind** eye 27.1  
 in the **blink** of an eye 15.1  
 a chip off the old **block** 2.2  
 a stumbling **block** 22.1  
 have blue **blood** 3.3  
 like getting **blood** from a stone (UK) / like getting  
     blood from a turnip (US) 20.2  
 make someone's **blood** boil 13.1  
 someone's **blood** runs cold 13.3  
**blow** it 19.3  
 blow your own trumpet (UK),  
     *see* toot your own horn (US)  
 mind-**blowing** 5.1  
 come to **blows** 16.1  
 a **blue**-collar job 41.1  
 black and **blue** 54.1  
 feel **blue** 11.2  
 have **blue** blood 3.3  
 once in a **blue** moon 34.1, 54.1  
 out of the **blue** 54.1  
 get the **blues** 54.1  
 put it **bluntly** 46.2  
 above **board** 26.1  
 it's back to the drawing **board** 37.1  
 make someone's blood **boil** 13.1  
 a watched pot never **boils** 51.1  
 as **bold** as brass 4.1  
 the nuts and **bolts** 25.2  
 drop a **bombshell** 16.1  
 a **bone** of contention 9.2  
 as dry as a **bone** 50.1  
 all skin and **bones** 3.1  
 have a bee in your **bonnet** 35.1  
 wouldn't say **boo** to a goose 4.2  
 do everything by the **book** 28.1  
 read someone like a **book** 28.1  
 take a page out of your **book** (US) / take a leaf  
     out of your book (UK) 28.1  
 you can't judge a **book** by its cover 51.1  
 a **bookworm** 31.3  
 as tough as an old boot (UK), *see* as tough as  
     shoe leather (US)  
 give someone the **boot** 35.1  
 hang up your **boots** 35.1  
 shake in your **boots** 13.3  
 too big for your **boots** 35.1

be **born** with a silver spoon in your mouth 3.3  
 the best of **both** worlds 5.1  
 get to the **bottom** of 22.2  
 rock-**bottom** prices 32.1  
**bouncing** off the walls 12.3  
 think outside the **box** 40.2  
 pick someone's **brain** 15.1  
 rack your **brain** (US) / rack your brains (UK) 14.1  
 hold out an olive **branch** 9.2  
 as bold as **brass** 4.1  
 as **brave** as a lion 50.2  
**bread** and butter 41.3  
 know what side your **bread** is buttered on 8.1  
 the best thing since sliced **bread** 5.1  
 a hair's **breadth** 17.2  
**break** a leg! 15.1  
**break** the law 38.1  
**break** the mold 31.3  
**break** the news 25.2  
 a hearty **breakfast** 29.1  
 a **breakthrough** 31.3  
 a **breath** of fresh air 23.2  
 catch your **breath** 48.3  
 not hold your **breath** 19.3  
 with bated **breath** 12.3  
**breathe** down someone's neck 38.2  
 take a **breather** 36.2  
 a **breeze** 20.1  
 shoot the **breeze** 24.2  
 come up against a **brick** wall 22.1  
 like talking to a **brick** wall 24.1  
**bridge** the generation gap 1.1  
**bright** and early 34.2  
**bright**-eyed and bushy-tailed 12.3  
**bright** young things 1.1  
**bring** home the bacon 41.3  
**bring** the house down 39.2  
**bring** up 2.2  
 teeter on the **brink** 21.2  
 be like a **broken** record 28.1  
**broken**-hearted 11.2  
**brush** up on 31.1  
**brutally** honest 26.1  
**bucket** down (UK) / rain buckets (US) 23.1  
 be on a tight **budget** 33.1  
 bite the **bullet** 16.1  
 dodge a **bullet** 16.1  
 a **bumpy** ride 22.2  
 a **bundle** of nerves 15.1  
**burn** the candle at both ends 36.1  
**bursting** with excitement 12.3  
**bury** the hatchet 9.2  
**bury** your head in the sand 15.1  
 beat around the **bush** 23.3  
 bright-eyed and **bushy**-tailed 12.3  
**business** as usual 40.1  
 none of someone's **business** 26.1  
 as **busy** as a bee 50.2

bread and **butter** 41.3  
**butter** someone up 8.1  
 look like **butter** wouldn't melt in your mouth 3.1  
 know what side your bread is **buttered** on 8.1  
 a **butterfingers** 8.1  
 have **butterflies** in your stomach 12.3  
 a social **butterfly** 4.2  
**by** a whisker 17.2  
**by** the skin of your teeth 21.2  
**by** word of mouth 25.1  
 do everything **by** the book 28.1  
 learn something **by** heart 31.1

**C**  
 a piece of **cake** 20.1  
 the icing on the **cake** 5.1  
 make a **cake** 43.1  
 take the **cake** (US) / take the biscuit (UK) 8.1  
 you can't have your **cake** and eat it, too 8.1  
**call** in sick 30.2  
**call** it a day 18.2  
**call** the shots 38.2  
 give someone a **call** 44.1  
 make a phone **call** 43.1  
 keep **calm** 48.4  
 the **calm** before the storm 23.2  
 open a **can** of worms 20.2  
 burn the **candle** at both ends 36.1  
 a loose **canon** 16.1  
**can't** make heads or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1  
**can't** see the forest for the trees (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2  
 a feather in your **cap** 35.1  
 put on your thinking **cap** 31.1  
 in the **cards** (US) / on the cards (UK) 19.3  
 put your **cards** on the table 46.2  
 climb the **career** ladder 40.2  
 embark on a **career** 40.2  
 a **cash** cow 41.3  
**cast** a glance 27.1  
**cast** an eye over 27.1  
 a fat **cat** 41.3  
 a scaredy-**cat** 7.1  
**cat** got your tongue? 24.2  
 curiosity killed the **cat** 51.1  
 let the **cat** out of the bag 25.2  
 like the **cat** that got the cream 7.1  
 not enough room to swing a **cat** 7.1  
 put the cat among the pigeons (UK),  
   see stir up a hornet's nest (US)  
 take a **cat** nap 36.2  
**catch** a cold 48.3  
**catch** a glimpse of 48.3  
**catch** fire 48.3  
**catch** someone off guard 16.1

**catch** someone's eye 48.3  
**catch** red-handed 54.1  
**catch** the train 48.3  
**catch** your breath 48.3  
 the early bird **catches** the worm 51.1  
 fight like **cats** and dogs 9.2  
 rain **cats** and dogs 23.1  
**caught** between a rock and a hard place 22.2  
 a **chain** is only as strong as its weakest link 51.1  
 a slim **chance** 19.1  
 in for a **chance** of 19.1  
 not stand a **chance** 19.1  
 on the off-**chance** 19.1  
 take a **chance** 44.2  
**change** your tune 28.1  
 behave out of **character** 10.4  
 put someone in **charge** of 46.2  
 work like a **charm** 39.2  
**cheap** and nasty 6.1  
 dirt **cheap** 32.1  
 take a rain **check** on 23.2  
 a big **cheese** 41.3  
 get something off your **chest** 25.2  
 bite off more than you can **chew** 8.1  
**chicken** out of 7.1  
 no spring **chicken** 1.1  
 run around like a headless **chicken** 37.1  
 don't count your **chickens** before they hatch 51.1  
 keep your **chin** up! 15.1  
 a chinwag (UK), see a chitchat (US)  
 a **chip** off the old block 2.2  
 a **chitchat** (US) / a chinwag (UK) 24.2  
 make a **choice** 43.1  
 a **cinch** 20.1  
 go around in **circles** 37.1  
 first-**class** 5.1  
 take a **class** 44.2  
 world-**class** 5.1  
 a **clean** bill of health 30.2  
 come **clean** 26.1  
**clear** a hurdle 42.1  
 the coast is **clear** 21.2  
 a **clever** clogs 35.1  
 a mountain to **climb** 20.2  
**climb** the career ladder 40.2  
**cloak**-and-dagger 35.1  
 work around the **clock** 40.2  
 run like **clockwork** 39.2  
 a clever **clogs** 35.1  
 a **close**-knit family 2.2  
 a **close** shave 21.2  
**close** up shop (US) / shut up shop (UK) 33.1  
 come **close** 47.2  
 draw to a **close** 18.2  
 keep a **close** watch on 27.1  
 pay **close** attention 48.1  
 too **close** for comfort 21.2  
 on **cloud** nine 12.1

have your head in the **clouds** 23.2  
 the **coast** is clear 21.2  
 a heavy **cold** 30.2  
 as **cold** as ice 50.1  
 catch a **cold** 48.3  
 get **cold** feet 11.1, 15.1  
 have a **cold** 45.1  
 someone's blood runs **cold** 13.3  
 stone **cold** 29.2  
 a blue-**collar** job 41.1  
 a white-**collar** job 41.1  
 hot under the **collar** 35.1  
 pass with flying **colors** 31.3  
 show your true **colors** 54.1  
 all good things **come** to those who wait 51.1  
 all good things must **come** to an end 18.3  
**come** clean 26.1  
**come** close 47.2  
**come** down with something 30.1  
**come** in first (US) / come first (UK) 47.2  
**come** in last (US) / come last (UK) 47.2  
**come** into view 47.2  
**come** of age 1.2  
**come** prepared 47.2  
**come** rain or shine 23.1  
**come** to a decision 47.2  
**come** to an agreement 47.2  
**come** to an end 47.2  
**come** to a standstill 47.2  
**come** to blows 16.1  
**come** to grips with (US) / get to grips with (UK) 22.2  
**come** to the rescue 47.2  
**come** up against a brick wall 22.1  
 memories **come** flooding back 14.1  
 until the cows **come** home 34.1  
 too close for **comfort** 21.2  
 a pillar of the **community** 3.3  
 pay someone a **compliment** 48.1  
 reach a **compromise** 9.3  
 a foregone **conclusion** 19.3  
 suffer the **consequences** 38.2  
 a bone of **contention** 9.2  
 have a **conversation** 45.1  
 strike up a **conversation** 24.2  
 a tough **cookie** 4.3  
 do the **cooking** 43.2  
**cool** as a cucumber 4.3  
 a **copycat** 31.3  
 a far-flung **corner** 17.2  
 just around the **corner** 17.2  
 cut **corners** 36.2  
**cost** a fortune 33.1  
**cost** an arm and a leg 33.1  
**cost** next to nothing 32.1  
 a **couch** potato 8.1  
 don't **count** your chickens before they hatch 51.1  
 par for the **course** 42.1  
 the ball is in your **court** 41.2

you can't judge a book by its **cover** 51.1  
 a cash **cow** 41.3  
 until the **cows** come home 34.1  
 a tough nut to **crack** 22.2  
 at the **crack** of dawn 34.2  
 not all that it's **cracked** up to be 6.1  
 drive someone **crazy** 13.1  
 go **crazy** 47.1  
 like the cat that got the **cream** 7.1  
 the **crème** de la crème 5.1  
**cross** the line 38.1  
**cross** swords 16.1  
 get your wires **crossed** 25.1  
 a shoulder to **cry** on 15.1  
**cry** over spilled milk 8.1  
**cry** wolf 7.1  
**cry** your eyes out 11.1  
 a **crybaby** 4.1  
 cool as a **cucumber** 4.3  
 off-the-**cuff** 35.1  
 not someone's **cup** of tea 6.1  
**curiosity** killed the cat 51.1  
 throw someone a **curveball** 42.1  
**cut** corners 36.2  
**cutting**-edge 31.3

**D**  
 cloak-and-**dagger** 35.1  
 do **damage** 43.2  
 fraught with **danger** 21.2  
 a **dark** horse 4.2  
 past its sell-by **date** 6.1  
 set the **date** 46.1  
 at the crack of **dawn** 34.2  
 from dusk till **dawn** 34.2  
 a red-letter **day** 54.1  
 call it a **day** 18.2  
**day** of reckoning 38.2  
 save for a rainy **day** 32.1  
 the perfect end to a perfect **day** 18.3  
 daylight robbery (UK), *see* highway robbery (US)  
 have seen better **days** 6.1  
 beat a **dead** horse (US) / flog a dead horse (UK) 39.2  
 the **dead** of night 34.2  
 as **deaf** as a post 50.1  
 fall on **deaf** ears 27.2  
 go **deaf** 47.1  
 a good **deal** 33.1  
 hammer out a **deal** 9.2  
 strike a **deal** 9.3  
 a fate worse than **death** 6.1  
 come to a **decision** 47.2  
 throw in at the **deep** end 22.1, 42.1  
 deeply 49.3

like a **deer** in headlights (US) / like a rabbit in the headlights (UK) 7.1  
 out of your **depth** 20.2  
 get your just **deserts** 38.2  
 almost **die** of shame 13.4  
 to **die** for 5.1  
 in **dire** straits 22.1  
**dirt** cheap 32.1  
 dish the **dirt** 25.3  
 treat someone like **dirt** 10.1  
 agree to **disagree** 9.2  
 a recipe for **disaster** 39.2  
 a blessing in **disguise** 5.1  
**dish** the dirt 25.3  
 keep your **distance** 48.4  
 within walking **distance** 17.2  
 the **dizzy** heights 39.1  
**do** an experiment 43.2  
**do** damage 43.2  
**do** everything by the book 28.1  
**do** exercise 43.2  
**do** someone a favor 43.2  
**do** the cooking 43.2  
**do** the laundry 43.2  
**do** well 43.2  
**do** your best 43.2  
**do** your hair 43.2  
**do** your homework 43.2  
 just what the **doctor** ordered 30.2  
**dodge** a bullet 16.1  
 the top **dog** 41.3  
 fight like cats and **dogs** 9.2  
 rain cats and **dogs** 23.1  
 easier said than **done** 20.2  
**don't** count your chickens before they hatch 51.1  
**don't** push your luck! 19.2  
 a foot in the **door** 40.1  
 a let-**down** 6.1  
 bring the house **down** 39.2  
 bucket **down** (UK) / rain buckets (US) 23.1  
**down** in the dumps 13.1  
**down** to earth 4.1  
 have something **down** to an art 28.1  
 let someone **down** 10.1  
 let your hair **down** 11.2  
 put your foot **down** 38.2  
 put your head **down** (US) / get your head down (UK) 36.1  
 talk **down** to someone 24.1  
 win something hands **down** 39.1  
 a **downer** (US) / a misery guts (UK) 13.1  
 in driblets and **drabs** 17.1  
 a **drag** 34.1  
**drag** on 34.1  
 throw money down the **drain** 32.1  
**draw** to a close 18.2  
 it's back to the **drawing** board 37.1  
 of your **dreams** 5.1

get **dressed** 45.2  
 in **driblets** and drabs 17.1  
**drift** apart 2.1  
 you can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it **drink** 51.1  
 a round of **drinks** 29.2  
**drive** a hard bargain 33.1  
**drive** someone crazy 13.1  
**drive** someone nuts 11.3  
**drone** on 24.2  
 a **drop** in the ocean 17.1  
 at the **drop** of a hat 35.1  
**drop** a bombshell 16.1  
**drop** like flies 7.1  
 shop till you **drop** 33.1  
 look like a **drowned** rat 3.1  
**drum** something into someone's head 28.1  
**drum** up 28.1  
 as **dry** as a bone 50.1  
 like watching paint **dry** 6.1  
 water off a **duck's** back 7.1  
 have your **ducks** in a row 40.1  
 down in the **dumps** 13.1  
 from **dusk** till dawn 34.2  
 go **Dutch** 32.1

**E**  
 an **eager** beaver 12.3  
 an **eagle** eye 27.1  
 go in one **ear** and out the other 14.1  
 grin from **ear** to ear 12.1  
 lend a sympathetic **ear** 27.2  
 listen with half an **ear** 27.2  
 make a pig's **ear** of something 7.1  
 offer a sympathetic **ear** 10.1  
 play it by **ear** 15.1  
 talk someone's **ear** off 24.1  
 bright and **early** 34.2  
 the **early** bird catches the worm 51.1  
 fall on deaf **ears** 27.2  
 I'm all **ears** 27.2  
 music to someone's **ears** 12.1, 27.2, 28.1  
 walls have **ears** 27.2  
 wet behind the **ears** 1.1  
 down to **earth** 4.1  
 the salt of the **earth** 4.3  
 want the **earth** to swallow you up 13.4  
 easier said than done 20.2  
 all too **easy** 20.1  
**easy** money 32.1  
**easy** peasy 20.1  
 take it **easy** 36.2  
**eat** humble pie 8.1  
**eat** like a bird 29.2  
**eat** someone out of house and home 29.1

grab something to **eat** 29.2  
 I could **eat** a horse 29.2  
 I'll **eat** my hat 35.1  
 you can't have your cake and **eat** it, too 8.1  
 moth-**eaten** 6.1  
 cutting-**edge** 31.3  
 on **edge** 13.3  
 on the **edge** of your seat 12.3  
 rough around the **edges** 6.1  
 a good **egg** 4.3  
 a nest-**egg** 32.1  
 have **egg** on your face 11.3  
 walk on **eggshells** 8.1  
**elbow** grease 36.1  
 the **elephant** in the room 7.1  
**embark** on a career 40.2  
 a fitting **end** 18.3  
 all good things must come to an **end** 18.3  
 come to an **end** 47.2  
 put an **end** to 18.3  
 the **end** is in sight 18.3  
 the **end** of an era 18.3  
 the perfect **end** to a perfect day 18.3  
 throw in at the deep **end** 22.1, 42.1  
 burn the candle at both **ends** 36.1  
 make **ends** meet 32.1  
 green with **envy** 11.2, 54.1  
 the end of an era 18.3  
**erase** the memory of 14.1  
 have a narrow **escape** 21.2  
 something's name **escapes** you 14.1  
 a black-tie **event** 54.1  
 do **everything** by the book 28.1  
**everything** but the kitchen sink 17.1  
 give an **example** 44.1  
 set an **example** 46.1  
 bursting with **excitement** 12.3  
 do **exercise** 43.2  
 fall short of **expectations** 6.1  
 not live up to **expectations** 6.1  
 hands-on **experience** 40.1  
 do an **experiment** 43.2  
**extended** family 2.2  
 go the **extra** mile 36.1, 40.1  
 a bird's-**eye** view 7.1  
 a black **eye** 54.1  
 an eagle **eye** 27.1  
 as far as the **eye** can see 17.2  
 beauty is in the **eye** of the beholder 51.1  
 cast an **eye** over 27.1  
 catch someone's **eye** 48.3  
 in the blink of an **eye** 15.1  
 keep an **eye** on 27.1  
 see **eye** to eye 9.1  
 the apple of someone's **eye** 8.1  
 turn a blind **eye** 27.1  
 up to your **eyeballs** 40.1  
 bright-**eyed** and bushy-tailed 12.3

cry your **eyes** out 11.1  
 have **eyes** in the back of your head 15.1  
 keep your **eyes** peeled 27.1  
 with your **eyes** shut 20.1

**F**  
**face** the music 28.1  
 fall flat on its **face** 39.2  
 have egg on your **face** 11.3  
 lose **face** 13.4  
 stuff your **face** 29.2  
 two-**faced** 4.1  
 memories are **fading** 14.1  
 an utter **failure** 39.2  
 a **fair**-weather friend 2.1  
**fall** flat on its face 39.2  
**fall** on deaf ears 27.2  
**fall** short of expectations 6.1  
 a close-knit **family** 2.2  
 a **family** friend 2.2  
 a **family** heirloom 2.2  
 extended **family** 2.2  
 immediate **family** 2.2  
 run in someone's **family** 2.2  
 start a **family** 2.2  
 the black sheep of the **family** 2.2  
 a **far**-flung corner 17.2  
 as **far** as the eye can see 17.2  
**far** and wide 17.2  
 few and **far** between 17.1  
 go out of **fashion** 47.1  
 as **fast** as lightning 50.1  
 a **fat** cat 41.3  
 a **fate** worse than death 6.1  
 generous to a **fault** 10.1  
 do someone a **favor** 43.2  
 the hot **favourite** (UK) /  
     the heavy favorite (US) 19.3  
 a **feast** fit for a king 29.1  
 a **feather** in your cap 35.1  
 as light as a **feather** 50.1  
 spoon-**feed** 8.1, 41.3  
**feel** blue 11.2  
**feel** for 10.1  
**feel** your age 1.2  
 that sinking **feeling** 13.3  
 get cold **feet** 11.1, 15.1  
 itchy **feet** 11.2  
 put your **feet** up 36.2  
**few** and far between 17.1  
 as fit as a **fiddle** 30.2  
 a level playing **field** 41.2  
**fight** a losing battle 22.2  
**fight** like cats and dogs 9.2  
 a ballpark **figure** 42.1  
**fill** someone in 25.1

the **final** straw 22.1  
**fine**-tune 28.1  
 not lift a **finger** 36.2  
 green fingers (UK), *see* a green thumb (US)  
 put the **finishing** touches on something (US) / put  
     the finishing touches to something (UK) 18.2  
 catch **fire** 48.3  
 get on like a house on **fire** 2.1  
 hold **fire** 16.1  
 in the line of **fire** (US) / in the firing line (UK) 16.1  
 not going to set the world on **fire** 6.1  
 set **fire** 46.1  
**fired** 40.1  
 in the firing line (UK), *see* in the line of fire (US)  
 come in **first** (US) / come first (UK) 47.2  
**first**-class 5.1  
 put **first** 46.2  
 like a **fish** out of water 20.2  
 like shooting **fish** in a barrel 20.1  
 go **fishing** 47.1  
 something **fishy** 26.4  
 a feast **fit** for a king 29.1  
 as **fit** as a fiddle 30.2  
**fit** like a glove 50.3  
 a **fitting** end 18.3  
**five** o'clock shadow 3.1  
**flare** up 30.1  
 as **flat** as a pancake 8.1  
 fall **flat** on its face 39.2  
 drop like **flies** 7.1  
**fling** yourself into 12.3  
 flog a dead horse (UK), *see* beat a dead horse (US)  
 memories come **flooding** back 14.1  
 a far-**flung** corner 17.2  
**fly** by 34.2  
 when pigs **fly** (US) / pigs might fly (UK) 19.3  
 wouldn't hurt a **fly** 4.2  
 get off to a **flying** start 18.1  
 pass with **flying** colors 31.3  
**foam** at the mouth 11.2  
 a tough act to **follow** 5.1, 28.1  
 absence makes the heart grow **fonder** 51.1  
 put **food** on the table 8.1  
 a **foot** in the door 40.1  
 get off on the wrong **foot** 2.1  
 put your **foot** down 38.2  
 put your **foot** in it 46.2  
 a **foregone** conclusion 19.3  
 can't see the **forest** for the trees (US) / can't see  
     the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2  
**forge** ahead 37.1  
 hold down the **fort** (US) / hold the fort (UK) 16.1  
 back and **forth** 37.1  
 cost a **fortune** 33.1  
 take **40** winks 36.2  
 look **forward** to 52.2  
**fraught** with danger 21.2  
 set someone **free** 46.1

a breath of **fresh** air 23.2  
 make a **fresh** start 18.1  
 a fair-weather **friend** 2.1  
 a family **friend** 2.2  
 a mutual **friend** 2.1  
 make some **friends** 43.1  
 strike up a **friendship** with 2.1  
**from** dusk till dawn 34.2  
 go **from** strength to strength 39.2  
 the **front**-runner 41.2  
 a **fuddy-duddy** 4.1  
**full** of beans 11.3  
 have your hands **full** 36.1  
 in **full** swing 42.1  
 have **fun** 45.1  
 poke **fun** at 10.3

**G**  
 the gift of the **gab** 24.2  
 a howling gale (UK), *see* a howling wind (US)  
 at this stage of the **game** 42.1  
 a whole new ball **game** 42.1  
 bridge the generation **gap** 1.1  
 bridge the **generation** gap 1.1  
**generous** to a fault 10.1  
**get** a move on 34.1  
**get** angry 45.2  
**get** better 45.2  
**get** cold feet 11.1, 15.1  
**get** dressed 45.2  
**get** going 18.1, 45.2  
**get** home 45.2  
**get** in shape 30.2  
**get** lost 45.2  
**get** married 45.2  
**get** off on the wrong foot 2.1  
**get** off the ground 18.1  
**get** off to a flying start 18.1  
**get** on in years (US) / *get* on (UK) 1.1  
**get** on like a house on fire 2.1  
**get** on someone's nerves 15.1  
**get** on your high horse 7.1  
**get** out of hand 38.2  
**get** someone's goat 7.1  
**get** something off your chest 25.2  
**get** started 45.2  
**get** the ball rolling 18.1, 42.1  
**get** the blues 54.1  
**get** the show on the road 28.1  
**get** thin on top (US) / *go* thin on top (UK) 3.1  
**get** tired 45.2  
**get** to the bottom of 22.2  
 get to grips with (UK), *see* come to grips with (US)  
**get** wind of 27.2  
**get** worse 45.2  
**get** your act together 37.1

get your head down (UK), *see* put your head down (US)  
**get** your just deserts 38.2  
**get** your wires crossed 25.1  
 look like you've seen a **ghost** 3.1  
 the **gift** of the gab 24.2  
**give** an answer 44.1  
**give** an example 44.1  
**give** a presentation 44.1  
**give** a speech 44.1  
**give** birth 44.1  
**give** or take 17.1  
**give** priority 44.1  
**give** someone a call 44.1  
**give** someone a hard time 10.1  
**give** someone a hug 44.1  
**give** someone a lift 44.1  
**give** someone the boot 35.1  
**give** someone the thumbs-up 9.1  
**give** something your best shot 36.1  
**give** the go-ahead 9.1  
**give** the green light to 9.1  
**give** the impression 44.1  
 cast a **glance** 27.1  
 catch a **glimpse** of 48.3  
 fit like a **glove** 50.3  
 handle someone with kid **gloves** 35.1  
 the **gloves** are off 42.1  
**go** abroad 47.1  
**go** around in circles 37.1  
**go** bad (US) / *go* off (UK) 47.1  
**go** bananas 11.3  
**go** bankrupt 47.1  
**go** bargain-hunting 33.1  
**go** behind someone's back 26.3  
**go** belly up 39.2  
**go** crazy 47.1  
**go** deaf 47.1  
**go** Dutch 32.1  
**go** fishing 47.1  
**go** from strength to strength 39.2  
**go** in one ear and out the other 14.1  
**go** missing 47.1  
 go off (UK), *see* go bad (US)  
**go** on a shopping spree 33.1  
**go** out of fashion 47.1  
**go** over someone's head 31.1  
 go pear-shaped (UK), *see* go sideways  
**go** places 39.2  
**go** quiet 47.1  
**go** sideways (US) / *go* pear-shaped (UK) 39.2  
**go** smoothly 47.1  
**go** the extra mile 36.1, 40.1  
 go thin on top (UK), *see* get thin on top (US)  
**go** under the hammer 33.1  
**go** window shopping 33.1  
 raring to **go** 12.3  
 the show must **go** on! 28.1

touch-and-go 19.3  
 give the **go-ahead** 9.1  
 move the **goalposts** 42.1  
 get someone's **goat** 7.1  
 get **going** 18.1, 45.2  
 get your head down (UK), *see* put your head down (US)  
 as good as **gold** 50.1  
 a **golden** handshake (UK) / a golden parachute (US) 41.1  
 a **golden** opportunity 54.1  
 a **good** deal 33.1  
 a **good** egg 4.3  
 all **good** things come to those who wait 51.1  
 all **good** things must come to an end 18.3  
 as **good** as gold 50.1  
 too smart for your own **good** 4.1  
 wouldn't say boo to a **goose** 4.2  
**grab** something to eat 29.2  
 take something with a **grain** of salt (US) / take something with a pinch of salt (UK) 25.3  
 sour **grapes** 8.1  
 hear something through the **grapevine** 25.3  
 knee-high to a **grasshopper** 1.2  
 a **gray** area 54.1  
 elbow **grease** 36.1  
**great** age 1.2  
**great** minds think alike 31.1  
 make **great** strides 37.1  
 a **green** thumb (US) / green fingers (UK) 54.1  
 give the **green** light to 9.1  
**green** with envy 11.2, 54.1  
 the **green** belt 54.1  
**grin** and bear it 22.2  
**grin** from ear to ear 12.1  
 an ax to **grind** 16.1  
**grind** to a halt 18.2  
 come to **grips** with (US) / *get* to grips with (UK) 22.2  
 immaculately **groomed** 3.2  
 get off the **ground** 18.1  
 hit the **ground** running 18.1  
 the middle **ground** 9.3  
 money doesn't **grow** on trees 32.1  
 growing pains (US), *see* teething problems (UK)  
 hold a **grudge** 48.2  
 catch someone off **guard** 16.1  
 anyone's **guess** 19.3  
 stick to your **guns** 16.1

**H**  
 a **hair's** breadth 17.2  
 do your **hair** 43.2  
 let your **hair** down 11.2  
 make someone's **hair** stand on end 13.3



never have a **hair** out of place 3.2  
 listen with **half** an ear 27.2  
 tell **half**-truths 26.3  
 meet someone **halfway** 9.3  
 grind to a **halt** 18.2  
 a problem shared is a problem **halved** 51.1  
 go under the **hammer** 33.1  
**hammer** out a deal 9.2  
 get out of **hand** 38.2  
**hand** in your notice 40.1  
 know something like the back of your **hand** 31.1  
 lend a **hand** 10.1  
 catch red-**handed** 54.1  
**handle** someone with kid gloves 35.1  
**hands**-on experience 40.1  
 have your **hands** full 36.1  
 in safe **hands** 21.1  
 many **hands** make light work 51.1  
 take the law into your own **hands** 38.2  
 take your life in your **hands** 21.2  
 win something **hands** down 39.1  
 a golden **handshake** (UK) / a golden parachute (US) 41.1  
**hang** by a thread 21.2  
**hang** up your boots 35.1  
 caught between a rock and a **hard** place 22.2  
 drive a **hard** bargain 33.1  
 give someone a **hard** time 10.1  
**hard** of hearing 27.2  
 at the drop of a **hat** 35.1  
 I'll eat my **hat** 35.1  
 keep something under your **hat** 26.1  
 old **hat** 35.1  
 take your **hat** off to 35.1  
 don't count your chickens before they **hatch** 51.1  
 bury the **hatchet** 9.2  
**have** a baby 45.1  
**have** a cold 45.1  
**have** a conversation 45.1  
**have** a hunch 26.4  
**have** an appointment 45.1  
**have** an argument 45.1  
**have** a party 45.1  
**have** a rest 45.1  
**have** a sneaking suspicion 26.4  
**have** a talk 45.1  
**have** egg on your face 11.3  
**have** fun 45.1  
**have** lunch 45.1  
**have** something down to an art 28.1  
**have** your ducks in a row 40.1  
**have** your hands full 36.1  
**have** your head in the clouds 23.2  
**have** your heart set on 15.1  
 not **have** two pennies to rub together 3.3  
 you can't **have** your cake and eat it, too 8.1  
 watch someone like a **hawk** 27.1  
 hit the **hay** (US) / hit the sack (UK) 23.2

bury your **head** in the sand 15.1  
 drum something into someone's **head** 28.1  
 go over someone's **head** 31.1  
 have eyes in the back of your **head** 15.1  
 have your **head** in the clouds 23.2  
**head** over heels 12.1  
 put your **head** down (US) / get your head down (UK) 36.1  
 the **head** 38.2  
 run around like a **headless** chicken 37.1  
 two **heads** are better than one 51.1  
 a splitting **headache** 30.1  
 like a deer in **headlights** (US) / like a rabbit in the headlights (UK) 7.1  
 can't make **heads** or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1  
 a clean bill of **health** 30.2  
 the picture of **health** 30.2  
**hear** something from the horse's mouth 25.2  
**hear** something through the grapevine 25.3  
 hard of **hearing** 27.2  
 absence makes the **heart** grow fonder 51.1  
 have your **heart** set on 15.1  
 learn something by **heart** 31.1  
 put your **heart** and soul into 12.3  
 someone's **heart** sinks 15.1  
 wear your **heart** on your sleeve 11.1  
 with a heavy **heart** 13.1  
 young at **heart** 1.2  
 big **hearted** 10.1  
 broken-**hearted** 11.2  
 a **heart**y breakfast 29.1  
 put the **heat** on 46.2  
 a **heavy** cold 30.2  
 the heavy favorite (US), *see* the hot favourite (UK)  
 head over **heels** 12.1  
 a **hefty** sum 32.1  
 the dizzy **heights** 39.1  
 a family **heirloom** 2.2  
 get on your **high** horse 7.1  
 a **high**flier (US) / a high-flier (UK) 3.3  
**highly** 49.1  
**highway** robbery (US) / daylight robbery (UK) 33.1  
 over the **hill** 1.2  
 as old as the **hills** 1.1, 50.1  
**hit** it off 2.1  
**hit** the big time 39.1  
**hit** the ground running 18.1  
**hit** the hay (US) / hit the sack (UK) 23.2  
**hit** the jackpot 39.1  
**hit** the right note 28.1  
**hit** the road 37.1  
**hit** the roof 13.1  
 hit the sack (UK), *see* hit the hay (US)  
**hold** a grudge 48.2  
**hold** a meeting 48.2  
**hold** down a job 40.2

**hold** down the fort (US) / hold the fort (UK) 16.1  
**hold** fire 16.1  
**hold** out an olive branch 9.2  
**hold** the line 48.2  
**hold** your tongue 48.2  
 not **hold** your breath 19.3  
 bring **home** the bacon 41.3  
 eat someone out of house and **home** 29.1  
 get **home** 45.2  
 nothing to write **home** about 6.1  
 until the cows come **home** 34.1  
 do your **homework** 43.2  
 set **homework** 46.1  
 brutally **honest** 26.1  
**honesty** is the best policy 51.1  
 on the hoof (UK), *see* on the run (US)  
 let someone off the **hook** 38.1  
 toot your own **horn** (US) / blow your own trumpet (UK) 28.1  
 stir up a **hornet's** nest (US) / put the cat among the pigeons (UK) 25.2  
 a dark **horse** 4.2  
 a two-**horse** race 7.1  
 beat a dead **horse** (US) / flog a dead horse (UK) 39.2  
 get on your high **horse** 7.1  
 hear something from the **horse's** mouth 25.2  
 I could eat a **horse!** 29.2  
 you can lead a **horse** to water, but you can't make it drink 51.1  
**hot** under the collar 35.1  
 piping **hot** 29.2  
 the **hot** favourite (UK) / the heavy favorite (US) 19.3  
 sell like **hotcakes** 8.1, 41.3  
 the wee **hours** 34.2  
 bring the **house** down 39.2  
 eat someone out of **house** and home 29.1  
 get on like a **house** on fire 2.1  
 a **howling** wind (US) / a howling gale (UK) 23.1  
 give someone a **hug** 44.1  
 eat **humble** pie 8.1  
 have a **hunch** 26.4  
 go bargain-**hunting** 33.1  
 job **hunting** 40.2  
 clear a **hurdle** 42.1  
 wouldn't **hurt** a fly 4.2

| as cold as **ice** 50.1  
 skating on thin **ice** 21.2  
 the tip of the **iceberg** 22.1  
 the **icing** on the cake 5.1  
**if** looks could kill 27.1  
**I'm** all ears 27.2  
 the spitting **image** of 3.1

a vivid **imagination** 4.1  
**immaculately** groomed 3.2  
**immediate** family 2.2  
 give the **impression** 44.1  
**improve** with age 1.2  
 be **in** the wars 16.1  
**in** a bit of a tight spot 22.1  
**in** a jam 22.1  
**in** a league of your own 42.1  
**in** a nutshell 40.1  
**in** bad shape 30.2  
**in** dire straits 22.1  
**in** for a chance of 19.1  
**in** full swing 42.1  
**in** living memory 14.1  
**in** luck 19.2  
**in** one piece 21.2  
**in** safe hands 21.1  
**in** someone's shoes 35.1  
**in** the blink of an eye 15.1  
**in** the cards (US) / on the cards (UK) 19.3  
**in** the line of fire (US) / in the firing line (UK) 16.1  
**in** the nick of time 34.2  
**in** the prime of your life 1.2  
**in** the red 41.1  
 know something **inside** out 31.1  
**itchy** feet 11.2  
**it's** back to the drawing board 37.1

**J**  
 hit the **jackpot** 39.1  
 in a **jam** 22.1  
**jazz** up 28.1  
 a blue-collar **job** 41.1  
 a nine-to-five **job** 40.2  
 a white-collar **job** 41.1  
**job** hunting 40.2  
**job** satisfaction 40.2  
 hold down a **job** 40.2  
 land a **job** 40.2  
 an average **Joe** 4.1  
**jog** someone's memory 14.1  
 make a **joke** 43.1  
 play practical **jokes** 10.3  
 a **joy** to behold 12.2  
 jump for **joy** 12.2  
 someone's pride and **joy** 12.2  
 weep with **joy** 12.2  
 you can't **judge** a book by its cover 51.1  
 almost **jump** out of your skin 15.1  
**jump** down someone's throat 9.2  
**jump** for joy 12.2  
 get your **just** deserts 38.2  
**just** around the corner 17.2  
**just** what the doctor ordered 30.2

**K**  
**keep** a close watch on 27.1  
**keep** an eye on 27.1  
**keep** a stiff upper lip 11.2  
**keep** calm 48.4  
**keep** in mind (US) / bear in mind (UK) 14.1  
**keep** in touch with 2.1  
**keep** on the straight and narrow 38.1  
**keep** quiet 48.4  
**keep** someone in the loop 25.2  
**keep** someone in the picture 25.2  
**keep** someone posted 25.1  
**keep** something a secret 48.4  
**keep** something under your hat 26.1  
**keep** up appearances 3.1  
**keep** your chin up! 15.1  
**keep** your distance 48.4  
**keep** your eyes peeled 27.1  
**kick** off 18.1  
**kick** yourself 13.1  
 handle someone with **kid** gloves 35.1  
 if looks could **kill** 27.1  
**kill** time 34.2  
 curiosity **killed** the cat 51.1  
 a feast fit for a **king** 29.1  
 everything but the **kitchen** sink 17.1  
 as weak as a **kitten** 50.2  
**knee-high** to a grasshopper 1.2  
 the bee's **knees** 5.1  
 twist the **knife** 16.1  
 a close-**knit** family 2.2  
 before you **know** it 34.2  
**know** something inside out 31.1  
**know** something like the back of your hand 31.1  
**know** the score 42.1  
**know** what side your bread is buttered on 8.1  
**know** your stuff 31.1

**L**  
 climb the career **ladder** 40.2  
**land** a job 40.2  
 take a trip down memory **lane** 14.1  
 come in **last** (US) / come last (UK) 47.2  
 on its **last** legs 6.1  
 the **last** straw 6.1  
 better **late** than never 51.1  
 a barrel of **laughs** 4.1  
 do the **laundry** 43.2  
 break the **law** 38.1  
 obey the **law** 38.1  
 take the **law** into your own hands 38.2  
 a **lazybones** 36.2  
 take the **lead** 44.2  
 you can **lead** a horse to water, but you can't  
 make it drink 51.1

shake like a **leaf** 50.2  
 take a leaf out of your book (UK), *see* take a page  
 out of your book (US)  
 turn over a new **leaf** 18.1  
 in a **league** of your own 42.1  
 look before you **leap** 21.2  
**learn** something by heart 31.1  
**learn** the ropes 31.1  
 a new **lease** on life (US) / a new lease of life (UK)  
 30.2  
 as tough as shoe **leather** (US) / as tough as an  
 old boot (UK) 35.1  
**leave** a bad taste in someone's mouth 6.1  
**leave** no stone unturned 36.1  
**leave** someone in the lurch 10.1  
**left** out of the picture 28.1  
 break a **leg**! 15.1  
 cost an arm and a **leg** 33.1  
 pull someone's **leg** 10.3  
 on its last **legs** 6.1  
 stretch your **legs** 37.1  
 with your tail between your **legs** 13.4  
**lend** a hand 10.1  
**lend** a sympathetic ear 27.2  
 a **let-down** 6.1  
**let** someone down 10.1  
**let** someone off the hook 38.1  
**let** the cat out of the bag 25.2  
**let** your hair down 11.2  
 a red-**letter** day 54.1  
 a **level** playing field 41.2  
 a white **lie** 26.3  
**lie** through your teeth 26.3  
 a new lease on **life** (US) / a new lease of life (UK)  
 30.2  
 in the prime of your **life** 1.2  
 risk **life** and limb 21.2  
 take your **life** in your hands 21.2  
 give someone a **lift** 44.1  
 not **lift** a finger 36.2  
 as **light** as a feather 50.1  
 give the green **light** to 9.1  
**light-years** ahead of 31.3  
 many hands make **light** work 51.1  
 as fast as **lightning** 50.1  
 be **like** a broken record 28.1  
 fit **like** a glove 50.3  
 know something **like** the back of your hand 31.1  
**like** a deer in headlights (US) / like a rabbit in  
 the headlights (UK) 7.1  
**like** a fish out of water 20.2  
**like** an oven 23.1  
 like a rabbit in the headlights (UK), *see* like a  
 deer in headlights (US)  
**like** a war zone 16.1  
**like** getting blood from a stone (UK) / like  
 getting blood from a turnip (US) 20.2  
**like** shooting fish in a barrel 20.1

**like** talking to a brick wall 24.1  
**like** the cat that got the cream 7.1  
**like** two peas in a pod 3.1  
**like** watching paint dry 6.1  
 look **like** butter wouldn't melt in your mouth 3.1  
 read someone **like** a book 28.1  
 run around **like** a headless chicken 37.1  
 run **like** clockwork 39.2  
 run **like** the wind 50.2  
 shake **like** a leaf 50.2  
 sleep **like** a log 50.3  
 risk life and **limb** 21.2  
 cross the **line** 38.1  
 hold the **line** 48.2  
 in the **line** of fire (US) / in the firing line (UK) 16.1  
**line** your pockets 35.1  
 toe the **line** 38.2  
 top of the **line** (US) / top of the range (UK) 5.1  
 a chain is only as strong as its weakest **link** 51.1  
 as brave as a **lion** 50.2  
 the **lion's** share 7.1, 41.3  
 keep a stiff upper **lip** 11.2  
 my **lips** are sealed 26.1  
**listen** with half an ear 27.2  
 a **little** bird told me 25.2  
 precious **little** 17.1  
 not **live** up to expectations 6.1  
 in **living** memory 14.1  
**lock**, stock, and barrel 17.1  
 sleep like a **log** 50.3  
 a **lone** wolf 4.2  
 a **long** shot 16.1  
**long** in the tooth 1.2  
**look** before you leap 21.2  
**look** forward to 52.2  
**look** like a drowned rat 3.1  
**look** like a million bucks (US) / look a million dollars (UK) 3.2  
**look** like butter wouldn't melt in your mouth 3.1  
**look** like you've seen a ghost 3.1  
**look** the part 3.2  
 take a **look** 44.2  
 if **looks** could kill 27.1  
 keep someone in the **loop** 25.2  
 a **loose** cannon 16.1  
**lose** face 13.4  
**lose** touch with 2.1  
**lose** your train of thought 14.1  
 you win some, you **lose** some 42.1  
 fight a **losing** battle 22.2  
 get **lost** 45.2  
 actions speak **louder** than words 51.1  
 a **loudmouth** 24.2  
 a stroke of **luck** 19.2  
 beginner's **luck** 19.2  
 don't push your **luck!** 19.2  
 in **luck** 19.2  
 out of **luck** 19.2

sheer **luck** 19.2  
 have a **lump** in your throat 13.1  
 have **lunch** 45.1  
 leave someone in the **lurch** 10.1

## M

can't **make** heads or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1  
**make** a beeline for 37.1  
**make** a cake 43.1  
**make** a choice 43.1  
**make** a fresh start 18.1  
**make** a joke 43.1  
**make** a mess 43.1  
**make** a mountain out of a molehill 20.2  
**make** a noise 43.1  
**make** a phone call 43.1  
**make** a pig's ear of something 7.1  
**make** a rod for your own back 22.2  
**make** arrangements 43.1  
**make** a scene 28.1  
**make** ends meet 32.1  
**make** great strides 37.1  
**make** progress 43.1  
**make** some friends 43.1  
**make** someone's blood boil 13.1  
**make** someone's hair stand on end 13.3  
**make** someone's mouth water 29.1  
**make** waves 23.2  
**make** your bed 43.1  
**many** hands make light work 51.1  
 the black **market** 54.1  
 get **married** 45.2  
 a sit-down **meal** (US) / a slap-up meal (UK) 29.1  
 a square **meal** 29.1  
 make ends **meet** 32.1  
**meet** someone halfway 9.3  
 hold a **meeting** 48.2  
 look like butter wouldn't **melt** in your mouth 3.1  
**memories** are fading 14.1  
**memories** come flooding back 14.1  
 stir up **memories** 14.1  
 a **memory** like a sieve 14.1  
 a photographic **memory** 14.1  
 erase the **memory** of 14.1  
 in living **memory** 14.1  
 jog someone's **memory** 14.1  
 take a trip down **memory** lane 14.1  
 on the **mend** 30.2  
 make a **mess** 43.1  
 not shoot the **messenger** 16.1  
 take the mickey out of someone (UK),  
     see rib someone (US)  
 the **middle** ground 9.3  
 the **middle** of nowhere 17.2  
 go the extra **mile** 36.1, 40.1

a million **miles** away 27.2  
**miles** ahead of 5.1  
 cry over spilled **milk** 8.1  
 a **million** miles away 27.2  
 at the back of your **mind** 14.1  
**mind**-blowing 5.1  
 keep in **mind** (US) / bear in mind (UK) 14.1  
 someone's **mind** goes blank 14.1  
 something slips your **mind** 14.1  
 speak your **mind** 24.2  
 spring to **mind** 14.1  
 great **minds** think alike 31.1  
 a **minefield** 16.1  
 a misery guts (UK), see a downer (US)  
 go **missing** 47.1  
 break the **mold** 31.3  
 make a mountain out of a **molehill** 20.2  
 easy **money** 32.1  
**money** doesn't grow on trees 32.1  
 throw **money** around 32.1  
 throw **money** down the drain 32.1  
 once in a blue **moon** 34.1, 54.1  
 over the **moon** 12.1  
**moth**-eaten 6.1  
 set the wheels in **motion** 37.1  
 a **mountain** to climb 20.2  
 make a **mountain** out of a molehill 20.2  
 as quiet as a **mouse** 50.2  
 be born with a silver spoon in your **mouth** 3.3  
 by word of **mouth** 25.1  
 foam at the **mouth** 11.2  
 hear something from the horse's **mouth** 25.2  
 leave a bad taste in someone's **mouth** 6.1  
 look like butter wouldn't melt in your **mouth** 3.1  
 make someone's **mouth** water 29.1  
 get a **move** on 34.1  
**move** the goalposts 42.1  
 a stick-in-the-**mud** 23.3  
 face the **music** 28.1  
**music** to someone's ears 12.1, 27.2, 28.1  
 a **mutual** friend 2.1  
**my** lips are sealed 26.1

## N

**nail** something 39.1  
 something's **name** escapes you 14.1  
 take a cat **nap** 36.2  
 take a **nap** 44.2  
 have a **narrow** escape 21.2  
 keep on the straight and **narrow** 38.1  
 cheap and **nasty** 6.1  
 a pain in the **neck** 20.2  
 breathe down someone's **neck** 38.2  
 someone's **neck** of the woods 23.3  
 a bundle of **nerves** 15.1  
 get on someone's **nerves** 15.1

a **nest**-egg 32.1  
 stir up a hornet's **nest** (US) / put the cat among the pigeons (UK) 25.2  
 better late than **never** 51.1  
**never** have a hair out of place 3.2  
 a **new** lease on life (US) / a new lease of life (UK) 30.2  
 a whole **new** ball game 42.1  
 turn over a **new** leaf 18.1  
 a **newbie** 18.1  
 break the **news** 25.2  
 the bearer of bad **news** 25.2  
 cost **next** to nothing 32.1  
 in the **nick** of time 34.2  
 a **night** owl 7.1  
 the dead of **night** 34.2  
 a **nightmare** 22.1  
 a **nine-to-five** job 40.2  
 on cloud **nine** 12.1  
 a **no**-win situation 22.1  
**no** spring chicken 1.1  
 there's **no** time like the present 51.1  
 make a **noise** 43.1  
**none** of someone's business 26.1  
 second to **none** 5.1  
 pay through the **nose** 32.1  
**not** all that it's cracked up to be 6.1  
**not** enough room to swing a cat 7.1  
**not** going to set the world on fire 6.1  
**not** lift a finger 36.2  
**not** out of the woods 21.2  
**not** pulling your weight 36.2  
**not** rocket science 20.1  
**not** someone's cup of tea 6.1  
 top-**notch** 5.1  
 hit the right **note** 28.1  
 cost next to **nothing** 32.1  
**nothing** to write home about 6.1  
 hand in your **notice** 40.1  
 the middle of **nowhere** 17.2  
 a tough **nut** to crack 22.2  
 drive someone **nuts** 11.3  
 the **nuts** and bolts 25.2  
 in a **nutshell** 40.1



**obey** the law 38.1  
 a drop in the **ocean** 17.1  
 five **o'clock** shadow 3.1  
 against all **odds** 19.3  
 at **odds** 9.2  
 pay over the **odds** 33.1  
 catch someone **off** guard 16.1  
 get something **off** your chest 25.2  
 go off (UK), *see* go bad (US)  
 let someone **off** the hook 38.1

**off** the beaten path (US) / off the beaten track (UK) 17.2  
**off**-the-cuff 35.1  
**off**-the-shelf 33.1  
 go off (UK), *see* go bad (US)  
 on the **off**-chance 19.1  
 put **off** 46.2  
 set **off** 46.1  
 the gloves are **off** 42.1  
 well **off** 32.1  
**offer** a sympathetic ear 10.1  
 as **old** as the hills 1.1, 50.1  
 as tough as an old boot (UK), *see* as tough as shoe leather (US)  
**old** hat 35.1  
 ripe **old** age 1.2  
 hold out an **olive** branch 9.2  
 back **on** track 37.1  
 be **on** a tight budget 33.1  
 get **on** in years (US) / get on (UK) 1.1  
 get **on** like a house on fire 2.1  
 hands-**on** experience 40.1  
**on** cloud nine 12.1  
**on** edge 13.3  
**on** its last legs 6.1  
**on** the ball 42.1  
 on the cards (UK), *see* in the cards (US)  
**on** the edge of your seat 12.3  
 on the hoof (UK), *see* on the run (US)  
**on** the mend 30.2  
**on** the off-chance 19.1  
**on** the road to recovery 30.1  
**on** the ropes 39.2  
**on** the run (US) / on the hoof (UK) 37.1  
**on** the same page 9.1  
**on** the same wavelength 9.1  
**on** the tip of your tongue 14.1  
**on** the verge of 37.1  
**on** the warpath 13.1  
**on** time 34.1  
**on** top of the world 12.1  
**on** your best behavior 10.4  
**once** in a blue moon 34.1, 54.1  
 the **once**-over 27.1  
 a **one**-trick pony 7.1  
 back to square **one** 37.1  
 in **one** piece 21.2  
 two heads are better than **one** 51.1  
**open** a can of worms 20.2  
 a golden **opportunity** 54.1  
 a tall **order** 20.2  
 just what the doctor **ordered** 30.2  
 behave **out** of character 10.4  
 get **out** of hand 38.2  
 left **out** of the picture 28.1  
 not **out** of the woods 21.2  
**out** of luck 19.2  
**out** of pocket 32.1

**out** of the blue 54.1  
**out** of this world 5.1  
**out** of your depth 20.2  
 think **outside** the box 40.2  
 like an **oven** 23.1  
 go **over** someone's head 31.1  
**over** the hill 1.2  
**over** the moon 12.1  
 pay **over** the odds 33.1  
 smooth things **over** 9.2  
 the **once-over** 27.1  
 turn **over** a new leaf 18.1  
 an **overnight** success 39.1  
 a night **owl** 7.1  
 as wise as an **owl** 50.2  
 in a league of your **own** 42.1  
 toot your **own** horn (US) / blow your own trumpet (UK) 28.1  
 as strong as an **ox** 50.2  
 the world is your **oyster** 7.1

## P

at a snail's **pace** 37.1  
**packed** like sardines 8.1  
 on the same **page** 9.1  
 take a **page** out of your book (US) / take a leaf out of your book (UK) 28.1  
 a **pain** in the neck 20.2  
 growing pains (US), *see* teething problems (UK)  
 like watching **paint** dry 6.1  
**paint** the town red 54.1  
 as flat as a **pancake** 8.1  
 below **par** 42.1  
**par** for the course 42.1  
 a golden parachute (US), *see* a golden handshake (UK)  
**parched** 29.2  
 a walk in the **park** 20.1  
**parrot** 24.2  
 look the **part** 3.2  
 have a **party** 45.1  
**pass** with flying colors 31.3  
**past** its prime 6.1  
**past** its sell-by date 6.1  
 a **pat** on the back 15.1  
 off the beaten **path** (US) / off the beaten track (UK) 17.2  
**pay** a visit 48.1  
**pay** close attention 48.1  
**pay** over the odds 33.1  
**pay** someone a compliment 48.1  
**pay** someone back 48.1  
**pay** through the nose 32.1  
**pay** tribute 48.1  
**pay** your way 48.1  
 something **pays** peanuts 8.1

as proud as a **peacock** 50.2  
 something pays **peanuts** 8.1  
 go pear-shaped (UK), *see* go sideways (US)  
 like two **peas** in a pod 3.1  
 keep your eyes **peeled** 27.1  
 not have two **pennies** to rub together 3.3  
 practice makes **perfect** 51.1  
 the **perfect** end to a perfect day 18.3  
 a teacher's **pet** 31.3  
 make a **phone** call 43.1  
 take a **photo** 44.2  
 a **photographic** memory 14.1  
**pick** someone's brain 15.1  
**pick** up the pieces 22.2  
 a **picture** is worth a thousand words 51.1  
 keep someone in the **picture** 25.2  
 left out of the **picture** 28.1  
 put someone in the **picture** 28.1  
 the **picture** of health 30.2  
 eat humble **pie** 8.1  
**pie** in the sky 19.3  
 a **piece** of cake 20.1  
 in one **piece** 21.2  
 pick up the **pieces** 22.2  
 put the cat among the pigeons (UK), *see* stir up  
     a hornet's nest (US)  
 make a **pig's** ear of something 7.1  
 when **pigs** fly (US) / pigs might fly (UK) 19.3  
 a **pillar** of the community 3.3  
 take something with a pinch of salt (UK),  
     *see* take something with a grain of salt (US)  
**piping** hot 29.2  
**pitch** black 54.1  
 never have a hair out of **place** 3.2  
 go **places** 39.2  
 plain sailing (UK), *see* smooth sailing (US)  
**play** it by ear 15.1  
**play** it safe 21.1  
**play** practical jokes 10.3  
 a team **player** 41.2  
 a level **playing** field 41.2  
 out of **pocket** 32.1  
 line your **pockets** 35.1  
 like two peas in a **pod** 3.1  
**poke** fun at 10.3  
 honesty is the best **policy** 51.1  
 a one-trick **pony** 7.1  
 as deaf as a **post** 50.1  
 keep someone **posted** 25.1  
 a watched **pot** never boils 51.1  
 a couch **potato** 8.1  
 play **practical** jokes 10.3  
**practice** makes perfect 51.1  
**precious** little 17.1  
 come **prepared** 47.2  
 there's no time like the **present** 51.1  
 give a **presentation** 44.1  
 put **pressure** on 46.2

bargain-basement **prices** 33.1  
 rock-bottom **prices** 32.1  
 slash **prices** 33.1  
**pricey** 32.1  
 someone's **pride** and joy 12.2  
 in the **prime** of your life 1.2  
 past its **prime** 6.1  
 give **priority** 44.1  
 a **problem** shared is a problem halved 51.1  
 teething **problems** (UK) / growing pains (US) 20.2  
 make **progress** 43.1  
 a **promising** start 18.1  
 as **proud** as a peacock 50.2  
**pull** out all the stops 36.1  
**pull** someone's leg 10.3  
**pull** your socks up 35.1  
 not **pulling** your weight 36.2  
 don't **push** your luck! 19.2  
**put** an end to 18.3  
**put** a stop to 46.2  
**put** first 46.2  
**put** food on the table 8.1  
**put** it bluntly 46.2  
**put** off 46.2  
**put** on your thinking cap 31.1  
**put** pressure on 46.2  
**put** someone in charge of 46.2  
**put** someone in the picture 28.1  
**put** something in writing 46.2  
 put the cat among the pigeons (UK), *see* stir up  
     a hornet's nest (US)  
**put** the finishing touches on something (US) / put  
     the finishing touches to something (UK) 18.2  
**put** the heat on 46.2  
**put** your cards on the table 46.2  
**put** your feet up 36.2  
**put** your foot down 38.2  
**put** your foot in it 46.2  
**put** your head down (US) / get your head  
     down (UK) 36.1  
**put** your heart and soul into 12.3

## Q

**quench** your thirst 29.2  
 as **quiet** as a mouse 50.2  
 go **quiet** 47.1  
 keep **quiet** 48.4

## R

like a rabbit in the headlights (UK), *see* like a deer  
     in headlights (US)  
 a two-horse **race** 7.1  
 the rat **race** 41.3  
**rack** your brain (US) / rack your brains (UK) 14.1

as right as **rain** 30.2  
 come **rain** or shine 23.1  
 rain buckets (US), *see* bucket down (UK)  
**rain** cats and dogs 23.1  
 take a **rain** check on 23.2  
 save for a **rainy** day 32.1  
 top of the range (UK), *see* top of the line (US)  
**raring** to go 12.3  
 look like a drowned **rat** 3.1  
 smell a **rat** 26.4  
 the **rat** race 41.3  
 second **rate** 6.1  
**rave** reviews 5.1  
 a **ray** of sunshine 23.2  
**reach** a compromise 9.3  
**reach** a verdict 38.2  
**read** someone like a book 28.1  
**read** someone the riot act 9.2  
**recharge** your batteries 30.2  
 a **recipe** for disaster 39.2  
 day of **reckoning** 38.2  
 be like a broken **record** 28.1  
 on the road to **recovery** 30.1  
 a **red**-letter day 54.1  
 catch **red**-handed 54.1  
 in the **red** 41.1  
 paint the town **red** 54.1  
**red** tape 41.1  
*see* **red** 11.2, 54.1  
 turn beet-**red** 54.1  
**reduce** to tears 13.1  
 come to the **rescue** 47.2  
 bear a striking **resemblance** 3.1  
 have a **rest** 45.1  
**retail** therapy 33.1  
 rave **reviews** 5.1  
**rib** someone (US) / take the mickey out of  
     someone (UK) 10.3  
 strike it **rich** 32.1  
 a bumpy **ride** 22.2  
 take someone for a **ride** 26.3  
 ridiculously 49.6  
 as **right** as rain 30.2  
 hit the **right** note 28.1  
**ring** a bell 14.1  
 read someone the **riot** act 9.2  
 a **rip-off** 32.1  
**ripe** old age 1.2  
**risk** life and limb 21.2  
 run the **risk** 21.2  
 get the show on the **road** 28.1  
 hit the **road** 37.1  
 on the **road** to recovery 30.1  
 highway **robbery** (US) / daylight robbery (UK)  
     33.1  
 caught between a **rock** and a hard place 22.2  
**rock**-bottom prices 32.1  
 not **rocket** science 20.1



make a **rod** for your own back **22.2**  
**roll** up your sleeves **35.1, 36.1**  
 get the ball **rolling** **18.1, 42.1**  
**rolling** in it **32.1**  
 hit the **roof** **13.1**  
 not enough **room** to swing a cat **7.1**  
 the elephant in the **room** **7.1**  
 rule the **roost** **38.2**  
 learn the **ropes** **31.1**  
 on the **ropes** **39.2**  
**rough** around the edges **6.1**  
 a **round** of drinks **29.2**  
 have your ducks in a **row** **40.1**  
 not have two pennies to **rub** together **3.3**  
**rub** salt into the wound **22.2**  
 a **rule** of thumb **15.1**  
**rule** the roost **38.2**  
 bend the **rules** **38.1**  
 on the **run** (US) / on the hoof (UK) **37.1**  
**run** around like a headless chicken **37.1**  
**run** in someone's family **2.2**  
**run** like clockwork **39.2**  
**run** like the wind **50.2**  
**run** the risk **21.2**  
 a **runaway** success **39.2**  
 the front-**runner** **41.2**  
 hit the ground **running** **18.1**  
 up and **running** **37.1**

**S**  
 hit the sack (UK), *see* hit the hay (US)  
 better **safe** than sorry **21.2**  
 in **safe** hands **21.1**  
 play it **safe** **21.1**  
**safe** and sound **21.1**  
**safety** first **21.1**  
 easier **said** than done **20.2**  
 set **sail** **46.1**  
 smooth **sailing** (US) / plain sailing (UK) **20.1**  
 rub **salt** into the wound **22.2**  
 take something with a grain of **salt** (US) / take something with a pinch of salt (UK) **25.3**  
 the **salt** of the earth **4.3**  
 on the **same** page **9.1**  
 on the **same** wavelength **9.1**  
 bury your head in the **sand** **15.1**  
 packed like **sardines** **8.1**  
 job **satisfaction** **40.2**  
**save** for a rainy day **32.1**  
**saved** by the bell **42.1**  
 wouldn't **say** boo to a goose **4.2**  
 a **scaredy**-cat **7.1**  
 a **scatterbrain** **15.1**  
 make a **scene** **28.1**  
 not rocket **science** **20.1**  
 a **scorcher** **23.1**

know the **score** **42.1**  
**scrape** by **31.3**  
 not be up to **scratch** (UK) / not be up to snuff (US) **6.1**  
 on the silver **screen** **54.1**  
**screw** up **39.2**  
 my lips are **sealed** **26.1**  
 on the edge of your **seat** **12.3**  
 take a **seat** **44.2**  
**second** rate **6.1**  
**second** to none **5.1**  
 keep something a **secret** **48.4**  
 top **secret** **26.1**  
 as far as the eye can **see** **17.2**  
 can't **see** the forest for the trees (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) **23.2**  
**see** eye to eye **9.1**  
**see** red **11.2, 54.1**  
 have **seen** better days **6.1**  
 look like you've **seen** a ghost **3.1**  
 a **selfish** streak **4.1**  
**sell** like hotcakes **8.1, 41.3**  
 past its **sell-by** date **6.1**  
**send** shivers down someone's spine **13.3**  
 talk some **sense** into someone **24.1**  
 have your heart **set** on **15.1**  
 not going to **set** the world on fire **6.1**  
**set** an alarm **46.1**  
**set** an example **46.1**  
**set** a trap **46.1**  
**set** fire **46.1**  
**set** homework **46.1**  
**set** off **46.1**  
**set** sail **46.1**  
**set** someone free **46.1**  
**set** the date **46.1**  
**set** the table **46.1**  
**set** the wheels in motion **37.1**  
 five o'clock **shadow** **3.1**  
**shake** in your boots **13.3**  
**shake** like a leaf **50.2**  
 almost die of **shame** **13.4**  
 get in **shape** **30.2**  
 in bad **shape** **30.2**  
 the lion's **share** **7.1, 41.3**  
 a problem **shared** is a problem halved **51.1**  
 a close **shave** **21.2**  
 the black **sheep** of the family **2.2**  
**sheer** luck **19.2**  
 as white as a **sheet** **11.2, 50.1**  
 off-the-**shelf** **33.1**  
 come rain or **shine** **23.1**  
 send **shivers** down someone's spine **13.3**  
 as tough as **shoe** leather (US) / as tough as an old boot (UK) **35.1**  
 in someone's **shoes** **35.1**  
 not **shoot** the messenger **16.1**  
**shoot** the breeze **24.2**

like **shooting** fish in a barrel **20.1**  
 close up **shop** (US) / shut up shop (UK) **33.1**  
**shop** around **33.1**  
**shop** till you drop **33.1**  
 talk **shop** **24.1**  
 go on a **shopping** spree **33.1**  
 go window **shopping** **33.1**  
 fall **short** of expectations **6.1**  
 a long **shot** **16.1**  
 give something your best **shot** **36.1**  
 call the **shots** **38.2**  
 a **shoulder** to cry on **15.1**  
 a weight off someone's **shoulders** **11.1**  
 get the **show** on the road **28.1**  
**show** your true colors **54.1**  
 steal the **show** **5.1**  
 the **show** must go on! **28.1**  
 take a **shower** **44.2**  
 shut up shop (UK), *see* close up shop (US)  
 with your eyes **shut** **20.1**  
 call in **sick** **30.2**  
 know what **side** your bread is buttered on **8.1**  
 the wrong **side** of the tracks **3.3**  
 go **sideways** (US) / go pear-shaped (UK) **39.2**  
 a memory like a **sieve** **14.1**  
 the end is in **sight** **18.3**  
 be born with a **silver** spoon in your mouth **3.3**  
 on the **silver** screen **54.1**  
 everything but the kitchen **sink** **17.1**  
**sink** or swim **42.1**  
 that **sinking** feeling **13.3**  
 someone's heart **sinks** **15.1**  
 a **sit-down** meal (US) / a slap-up meal (UK) **29.1**  
 a no-win **situation** **22.1**  
 a win-win **situation** **40.1**  
 talk yourself out of any awkward **situation** **24.1**  
**skating** on thin ice **21.2**  
 all **skin** and bones **3.1**  
 almost jump out of your **skin** **15.1**  
 by the **skin** of your teeth **21.2**  
 thick-**skinned** **15.1**  
 pie in the **sky** **19.3**  
 a **slacker** **36.2**  
 a **slap** on the wrist **38.2**  
 a slap-up meal (UK), *see* a sit-down meal (US)  
**slash** prices **33.1**  
**sleep** like a log **50.3**  
 up your **sleeve** **35.1**  
 wear your heart on your **sleeve** **11.1**  
 roll up your **sleeves** **35.1, 36.1**  
 the best thing since **sliced** bread **5.1**  
 a **slim** chance **19.1**  
 something **slips** your mind **14.1**  
**slowly** but surely **37.1**  
**small** talk **24.1**  
 too **smart** for your own good **4.1**  
**smell** a rat **26.4**  
**smooth** sailing (US) / plain sailing (UK) **20.1**

smooth things over 9.2  
 go smoothly 47.1  
 at a **snail's** pace 37.1  
 have a **sneaking** suspicion 26.4  
**snowed** under 36.1  
 not be up to snuff (US), *see* not be up to scratch (UK)  
 a **social** butterfly 4.2  
 pull your **socks** up 35.1  
 you win **some**, you lose some 42.1  
 come down with **something** 30.1  
 grab **something** to eat 29.2  
**something** fishy 26.4  
 better safe than **sorry** 21.2  
 put your heart and **soul** into 12.3  
 a **soulmate** 2.1  
 safe and **sound** 21.1  
**sour** grapes 8.1  
 actions **speak** louder than words 51.1  
**speak** your mind 24.2  
 give a **speech** 44.1  
**spill** the beans 25.3  
 cry over **spilled** milk 8.1  
**spin** a good yarn 24.2  
 send shivers down someone's **spine** 13.3  
 the **spitting** image of 3.1  
 a **splitting** headache 30.1  
**splurge** 33.1  
**spoil** your appetite 29.2  
 be born with a silver **spoon** in your mouth 3.3  
**spoon-feed** 8.1, 41.3  
 in a bit of a tight **spot** 22.1  
**spread** like wildfire 25.1  
 go on a shopping **spre**e 33.1  
 no **spring** chicken 1.1  
**spring** to mind 14.1  
 a **square** meal 29.1  
 back to **square** one 37.1  
**stab** someone in the back 16.1  
**stacks** of 17.1  
 at this **stage** of the game 42.1  
 make someone's hair **stand** on end 13.3  
 not **stand** a chance 19.1  
 come to a **standstill** 47.2  
 a promising **start** 18.1  
 get off to a flying **start** 18.1  
 make a fresh **start** 18.1  
**start** a family 2.2  
 get **started** 45.2  
**state-of-the-art** 31.3  
 a **steal** 33.1  
**steal** someone's thunder 23.2  
**steal** the show 5.1  
 a **stick-in-the-mud** 23.3  
**stick** to your guns 16.1  
 up **sticks** (UK) / uproot (US) 37.1  
 keep a **stiff** upper lip 11.2

**stir** up a hornet's nest (US) / put the cat among the pigeons (UK) 25.2  
**stir** up memories 14.1  
 lock, **stock**, and barrel 17.1  
 have butterflies in your **stomach** 12.3  
 a **stone's** throw 17.2  
 leave no **stone** unturned 36.1  
 like getting blood from a **stone** (UK) / like getting blood from a turnip (US) 20.2  
**stone** cold 29.2  
 put a **stop** to 46.2  
 pull out all the **stops** 36.1  
 a **storm** in a teacup 23.2  
 the calm before the **storm** 23.2  
 keep on the **straight** and narrow 38.1  
 in dire **straits** 22.1  
 the final **straw** 22.1  
 the last **straw** 6.1  
 a selfish **streak** 4.1  
 go from **strength** to strength 39.2  
**stretch** your legs 37.1  
 make great **strides** 37.1  
**strike** a deal 9.3  
**strike** it rich 32.1  
**strike** up a conversation 24.2  
**strike** up a friendship with 2.1  
 bear a **striking** resemblance 3.1  
 a **stroke** of luck 19.2  
 a chain is only as **strong** as its weakest link 51.1  
 as **strong** as an ox 50.2  
 strongly 49.4  
 know your **stuff** 31.1  
**stuff** your face 29.2  
 a **stumbling** block 22.1  
 an overnight **success** 39.1  
 a runaway **success** 39.2  
**suffer** the consequences 38.2  
**sugarcoat** 8.1  
 a hefty **sum** 32.1  
 a ray of **sunshine** 23.2  
 slowly but **surely** 37.1  
 have a sneaking **suspicion** 26.4  
 want the earth to **swallow** you up 13.4  
 a **sweet** tooth 15.1  
 sink or **swim** 42.1  
 in full **swing** 42.1  
 not enough room to **swing** a cat 7.1  
 cross **swords** 16.1  
 lend a **sympathetic** ear 27.2  
 offer a **sympathetic** ear 10.1

**T**  
 put food on the **table** 8.1  
 put your cards on the **table** 46.2  
 set the **table** 46.1  
**tackle** 42.1

with your **tail** between your legs 13.4  
 bright-eyed and bushy-**tailed** 12.3  
 can't make heads or **tails** of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1  
 give or **take** 17.1  
**take** 40 winks 36.2  
**take** a bite 44.2  
**take** a breather 36.2  
**take** a cat nap 36.2  
**take** a chance 44.2  
**take** a class 44.2  
**take** a look 44.2  
**take** a nap 44.2  
**take** a page out of your book (US) / take a leaf out of your book (UK) 28.1  
**take** a photo 44.2  
**take** a rain check on 23.2  
**take** a seat 44.2  
**take** a shower 44.2  
**take** a test 44.2  
**take** a trip down memory lane 14.1  
**take** it easy 36.2  
**take** someone for a ride 26.3  
**take** something with a grain of salt (US) / take something with a pinch of salt (UK) 25.3  
**take** the cake (US) / take the biscuit (UK) 8.1  
**take** the law into your own hands 38.2  
**take** the lead 44.2  
 take the mickey out of someone (UK), *see* rib someone (US)  
**take** your hat off to 35.1  
**take** your life in your hands 21.2  
**take** your time 34.1  
 have a **talk** 45.1  
 small **talk** 24.1  
**talk** big 24.1  
**talk** down to someone 24.1  
**talk** shop 24.1  
**talk** someone's ear off 24.1  
**talk** some sense into someone 24.1  
**talk** the talk 24.1  
**talk** yourself out of any awkward situation 24.1  
 you can **talk!** 24.1  
 like **talking** to a brick wall 24.1  
 a **tall** order 20.2  
 red **tape** 41.1  
 an acquired **taste** 29.2  
 leave a bad **taste** in someone's mouth 6.1  
 not someone's cup of **tea** 6.1  
 a **teacher's** pet 31.3  
 a storm in a **teacup** 23.2  
 a **team** player 41.2  
 reduce to **tears** 13.1  
**teeter** on the brink 21.2  
 by the skin of your **teeth** 21.2  
 lie through your **teeth** 26.3  
**teething** problems (UK) / growing pains (US) 20.2  
**tell** half-truths 26.3

to **tell** you the truth 26.1  
**tender** age 1.2  
 take a **test** 44.2  
**that** sinking feeling 13.3  
**the** ball is in your court 41.2  
**the** early bird catches the worm 51.1  
**the** show must go on! 28.1  
**the** world is your oyster 7.1  
 retail **therapy** 33.1  
**there's** no time like the present 51.1  
**thick**-skinned 15.1  
 get **thin** on top (US) / go thin on top (UK) 3.1  
 skating on **thin** ice 21.2  
 all good **things** come to those who wait 51.1  
 all good **things** must come to an end 18.3  
 bright young **things** 1.1  
 great minds **think** alike 31.1  
**think** outside the box 40.2  
**think** the world of 5.1  
 put on your **thinking** cap 31.1  
 quench your **thirst** 29.2  
 lose your train of **thought** 14.1  
 a picture is worth a **thousand** words 51.1  
 a **thousand-and-one** 17.1  
 hang by a **thread** 21.2  
 have a lump in your **throat** 13.1  
 jump down someone's **throat** 9.2  
 at each other's **throats** 11.1  
 hear something **through** the grapevine 25.3  
 lie **through** your teeth 26.3  
 pay **through** the nose 32.1  
 a stone's **throw** 17.2  
**throw** in at the deep end 22.1, 42.1  
**throw** in the towel 42.1  
**throw** money around 32.1  
**throw** money down the drain 32.1  
**throw** someone a curveball 42.1  
**throw** up 30.2  
 a green **thumb** (US) / green fingers (UK) 54.1  
 a rule of **thumb** 15.1  
 give someone the **thumbs**-up 9.1  
 twiddle your **thumbs** 15.1  
 steal someone's **thunder** 23.2  
 the **tide** has turned 23.3  
 a black-**tie** event 54.1  
**tied** up 40.2  
 tongue-**tied** 11.2  
 in a bit of a **tight** spot 22.1  
 be on a **tight** budget 33.1  
**tighten** your belt 32.1  
 about **time** 34.2  
 give someone a hard **time** 10.1  
 hit the big **time** 39.1  
 in the nick of **time** 34.2  
 kill **time** 34.2  
 on **time** 34.1  
 take your **time** 34.1  
 there's no **time** like the present 51.1

**time's** up! 34.1  
 waste **time** 34.1  
 on the **tip** of your tongue 14.1  
 the **tip** of the iceberg 22.1  
 get **tired** 45.2  
 warm and **toasty** (US) / warm as toast (UK) 8.1  
**toe** the line 38.2  
 get your act **together** 37.1  
 a little bird **told** me 25.2  
 cat got your **tongue**? 24.2  
 hold your **tongue** 48.2  
 on the tip of your **tongue** 14.1  
**tongue**-tied 11.2  
**tons** of 17.1  
**too** big for your boots 35.1  
**too** close for comfort 21.2  
**too** smart for your own good 4.1  
 a bad workman always blames his **tools** 51.1  
**toot** your own horn (US) / blow your own trumpet (UK) 28.1  
 a sweet **tooth** 15.1  
 long in the **tooth** 1.2  
 get thin on **top** (US) / go thin on top (UK) 3.1  
 on **top** of the world 12.1  
 the **top** dog 41.3  
**top**-notch 5.1  
**top** of the line (US) / top of the range (UK) 5.1  
**top** secret 26.1  
 keep in **touch** with 2.1  
 lose **touch** with 2.1  
**touch**-and-go 19.3  
**touch** base 25.1  
 put the finishing **touches** on something (US) / put the finishing touches to something (UK) 18.2  
 as **tough** as shoe leather (US) / as tough as an old boot (UK) 35.1  
 a **tough** act to follow 5.1, 28.1  
 a **tough** cookie 4.3  
 a **tough** nut to crack 22.2  
 throw in the **towel** 42.1  
 paint the **town** red 54.1  
 back on **track** 37.1  
 off the beaten track (UK), see off the beaten path (US)  
 the wrong side of the **tracks** 3.3  
 blaze a **trail** 37.1  
 catch the **train** 48.3  
 lose your **train** of thought 14.1  
 set a **trap** 46.1  
**treat** someone like dirt 10.1  
 bark up the wrong **tree** 7.1  
 can't see the forest for the **trees** (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2  
 money doesn't grow on **trees** 32.1  
 pay **tribute** 48.1  
 a one-**trick** pony 7.1  
 take a **trip** down memory lane 14.1  
 show your **true** colors 54.1

blow your own trumpet (UK), see toot your own horn (US)  
 bend the **truth** 26.3  
 to tell you the **truth** 26.1  
 tell half-**truths** 26.3  
 change your **tune** 28.1  
 fine-**tune** 28.1  
**turn** a blind eye 27.1  
**turn** beet-red 54.1  
**turn** over a new leaf 18.1  
 the tide has **turned** 23.3  
 like getting blood from a turnip (US), see like getting blood from a stone (UK)  
**twiddle** your thumbs 15.1  
**twilight** years 1.1  
**twist** the knife 16.1  
**twist** someone's arm 38.2  
 a **two**-horse race 7.1  
 like **two** peas in a pod 3.1  
 not have **two** pennies to rub together 3.3  
**two**-faced 4.1  
**two** heads are better than one 51.1

**U**  
**unacceptable** behavior 10.4  
 unbelievably 49.4  
 go **under** the hammer 33.1  
 keep something **under** your hat 26.1  
 snowed **under** 36.1  
**under** the weather 30.1  
**under** wraps 26.1  
**until** the cows come home 34.1  
 leave no stone **unturned** 36.1  
 not be **up** to scratch (UK) / not be up to snuff (US) 6.1  
 put your feet **up** 36.2  
 tied **up** 40.2  
**time's** up! 34.1  
**up** and about 30.2  
**up** and running 37.1  
**up** in arms 11.1  
**up** sticks (UK) / uproot (US) 37.1  
**up** to your eyeballs 40.1  
**up** your sleeve 35.1  
 an **uphill** battle 16.1  
 keep a stiff **upper** lip 11.2  
 uproot (US), see up sticks (UK)  
 business as **usual** 40.1  
 an **utter** failure 39.2

**V**  
 reach a **verdict** 38.2  
 on the **verge** of 37.1  
 a bird's-eye **view** 7.1

come into **view** 47.2  
pay a **visit** 48.1  
a **vivid** imagination 4.1

## W

all good things come to those who **wait** 51.1  
a **walk** in the park 20.1  
**walk** on eggshells 8.1  
within **walking** distance 17.2  
come up against a brick **wall** 22.1  
like talking to a brick **wall** 24.1  
bouncing off the **walls** 12.3  
**walls** have ears 27.2  
**want** the earth to swallow you up 13.4  
like a **war** zone 16.1  
be in the **wars** 16.1  
**warm** and toasty (US) / warm as toast (UK) 8.1  
on the **warpath** 13.1  
**wash** down 29.2  
**waste** time 34.1  
keep a close **watch** on 27.1  
**watch** someone like a hawk 27.1  
a **watched** pot never boils 51.1  
like **watching** paint dry 6.1  
like a fish out of **water** 20.2  
make someone's mouth **water** 29.1  
**water** off a duck's back 7.1  
you can lead a horse to **water**, but you can't  
make it drink 51.1  
on the same **wavelength** 9.1  
make **waves** 23.2  
pay your **way** 48.1  
as **weak** as a kitten 50.2  
a chain is only as strong as its **weakest** link 51.1  
the worse for **wear** 30.1  
**wear** your heart on your sleeve 11.1  
a fair-**weather** friend 2.1  
under the **weather** 30.1  
the **wee** hours 34.2  
**weep** with joy 12.2  
a **weight** off someone's shoulders 11.1  
not pulling your **weight** 36.2  
do **well** 43.2  
**well** behaved 10.4  
**well** off 32.1  
**wet** behind the ears 1.1  
set the **wheels** in motion 37.1  
**when** pigs fly (US) / pigs might fly (UK) 19.3  
**whip** up 29.1  
by a **whisker** 17.2  
a **whistleblower** 26.1  
a **white-collar** job 41.1  
a **white** lie 26.3  
as **white** as a sheet 11.2, 50.1  
a **whole** new ball game 42.1  
far and **wide** 17.2

spread like **wildfire** 25.1  
a no-**win** situation 22.1  
a **win-win** situation 40.1  
**win** something hands down 39.1  
you **win** some, you lose some 42.1  
a howling **wind** (US) / a howling gale (UK) 23.1  
get **wind** of 27.2  
run like the **wind** 50.2  
go **window** shopping 33.1  
take 40 **winks** 36.2  
get your **wires** crossed 25.1  
as **wise** as an owl 50.2  
**with** a heavy heart 13.1  
**with** your tail between your legs 13.4  
**within** walking distance 17.2  
a lone **wolf** 4.2  
cry **wolf** 7.1  
**wolf** down 29.1  
can't see the wood for the trees (UK), see can't  
see the forest for the trees (US)  
not out of the **woods** 21.2  
someone's neck of the **woods** 23.3  
by **word** of mouth 25.1  
actions speak louder than **words** 51.1  
a picture is worth a thousand **words** 51.1  
many hands make light **work** 51.1  
**work** around the clock 40.2  
**work** like a charm 39.2  
a bad **workman** always blames  
his tools 51.1  
not going to set the **world** on fire 6.1  
on top of the **world** 12.1  
out of this **world** 5.1  
the **world** is your oyster 7.1  
think the **world** of 5.1  
**world-class** 5.1  
the best of both **worlds** 5.1  
the early bird catches the **worm** 51.1  
open a can of **worms** 20.2  
a fate **worse** than death 6.1  
get **worse** 45.2  
someone's bark is **worse** than their bite 4.2  
the **worse** for wear 30.1  
a picture is **worth** a thousand words 51.1  
**wouldn't** hurt a fly 4.2  
**wouldn't** say boo to a goose 4.2  
rub salt into the **wound** 22.2  
under **wraps** 26.1  
a slap on the **wrist** 38.2  
nothing to **write** home about 6.1  
put something in **writing** 46.2  
bark up the **wrong** tree 7.1  
get off on the **wrong** foot 2.1  
the **wrong** side of the tracks 3.3

## Y

spin a good **yarn** 24.2  
get on in **years** (US) / get on (UK) 1.1  
light-**years** ahead of 31.3  
twilight **years** 1.1  
**you** can lead a horse to water, but you can't  
make it drink 51.1  
**you** can't judge a book by its cover 51.1  
**you** win some, you lose some 42.1  
bright **young** things 1.1  
**young** at heart 1.2

## Z

like a war **zone** 16.1  
**zone** out 27.2

# Index of common words and subjects

Entries are listed by unit number or module number. Main entries are **bold**.

## A

"absolutely" **49.1**  
advantage and disadvantage **3.3**  
adverbs, intensifying **49**  
age **1**  
agreement **9.1**  
amount **17.1**  
anger **13.2**  
animals **4.2, 7, 25.2, 41.4, 50.2**  
appearance **3**  
arts, the **28**  
"as" **50.1**  
authority **38**

## B

background **3.3**  
bad things **6**  
"beat" **52.4**  
beginning **18.1**  
behavior **10**  
body, the **11.1, 15, 38.2**  
"borrow" **52.5**  
business **40, 41**

## C

"carry" **53.4**  
"catch" **48.3**  
chance **19**  
character **4**  
"charge" **53.2**  
clothes **3.2, 35**  
college **31.2**  
colors **11.2, 41.1, 54**  
"come" **47.2**  
compromise **9.3**  
conflict **9.2**  
conversation **24.2**  
criticizing things **6**

## D

"damage" **53.1**  
danger **21.2**  
day, parts of the **34.2**  
dealing with problems **22.2**  
"deeply" **49.3**  
difficult situations **22**  
difficulties **20.2, 22.1**  
disagreement **9.2**  
distance **17.2**  
"do" **43.2**  
dress **3.2**  
drink/drinking **8, 29.2**

## E

ease **20.1**  
easily confused words **52, 53**  
eating **29.1**  
education **31**  
embarrassment **13.4**  
emotions **11**  
emotions, negative **13**  
emotions, positive **12**  
ending **18.2, 18.3**  
enthusiasm **12.3**  
excitement **12.4**  
"expect" **52.2**  
expressions, common **43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48**

## F

failure **39.2**  
family **2.2**  
fear **13.3**  
"feel" **52.7**  
feelings **12, 13**  
"fill up" **53.2**  
fitness **30.2**  
food **4.3, 8, 11.3, 25.3, 29.1, 41.3**  
friendship **2.1**

## G

"get" **45.2**  
"give" **44.1**  
"go" **47.1**  
good things **5**

## H

happiness **12.1**  
"have" **45.1**  
health **30**  
"hear" **52.3**  
hearing **27.2**  
"highly" **49.2**  
"hold" **48.2**  
"hope" **52.6**  
"hurt" **53.1**

## I

information, sharing **25**  
"injure" **53.1**  
intensifying adverbs **49**

## J

"job" **40.2, 53.7**  
"job" **40.2**  
"joy" **12.2**

## K

"keep" **48.4**  
keeping secrets **26.2**  
kindness **10.1**  
knowledge **31**

## L

law, the **38**  
lazy, being **36.3**  
learning **31**  
"lend" **52.5**  
lies **26**  
"like" **50.3**



"listen to" 52.3  
listening 27.2  
"load" 53.2  
"look at" 52.1  
"look forward to" 52.2  
looking 27.1  
luck 19  
"luck" 19.2

## M

"make" 43.1  
memory 14, 53.5  
money 32  
movement 37  
music 28

## N

nature 23  
negative emotions 13  
news, sharing 25.1  
night 34.2

## P

"pay" 48.1  
personality traits 4  
positive emotions 12  
praising things 5.1  
probability 19.3  
problems 20.2, 22.1, 22.2  
progress 37  
proverbs 51  
"put" 46.2

## R

recovery 30.1  
relationships 2  
relaxing 36.2  
"remember" 53.5  
"remind" 53.5  
"ridiculously" 49.6  
risk 21.2  
rules 38

## S

sadness 13.1  
safety 21.1  
"say" 53.3  
school 31.2  
science 31.3  
secrets, keeping 26.2  
"see" 52.1  
"sensible" 53.6  
"sensitive" 53.6  
"set" 46.1  
sharing information 25  
sharing news 25.1  
shoes 35  
shopping 33  
sickness 30.1  
similes 50  
"smell" 52.7  
speaking 24  
sports 41.2, 42  
starting 18.1  
"strongly" 49.4  
style 3.2  
success 39.1  
suspicion 26.4  
sympathy 10.1

## T

"take" 44.2  
"talk" 24.1  
talking 24  
teasing people 10.3  
technology 31.3  
"tell" 53.3  
telling lies 26.3  
telling the truth 26.1  
tests 31.2  
thinking 31  
time 34.1  
treating people badly 10.2  
truth 26

## U

"unbelievably" 49.5  
understanding 9.1

## W

war 16  
"wait" 52.2  
"watch" 52.1  
watching 27.1  
weapons 16  
"wear" 53.4  
weather 23  
"win" 52.4  
"wish" 52.6  
work 40, 41; "work" 53.7  
working 36  
working hard 36.1

# Acknowledgments

## **The publisher would like to thank:**

Edward Aves for editorial assistance; Shahid Mahmood, Chhaya Sajwan, and Michelle Staples for design assistance; Steph Lewis for proofreading and indexing; Christine Stroyan for audio recording management; and ID Audio for audio recording and production.

All images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit **[www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)**.